Owner's Manual

2026

ACCORD

Hybrid

General Information

California Proposition 65 Warning

⚠**WARNING:** Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to *www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle*.

Quebec Regulatory Notice

Availability of spare parts, repair service and information for maintenance or repair:
Pursuant to applicable Quebec regulation, Honda does not guarantee the availability of replacement parts, repair services, or information required for the maintenance or repair of this product or its components.
For more information visit:
www.honda.ca/en/quebecregulatorynotice (English)
www.honda.ca/fr/avisreglementaireduquebec (French)

Authorized Manuals

Web Owner's Manual

To view or download your vehicle's Web Owner's Manual, please visit *https://mygarage.honda.com*

Service Express

For electronic copies of service publications, you can purchase a subscription to Service Express. Visit *https://techinfo.honda.com* for pricing and options.

For U.S. Owners

Some manuals can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order a manual by phone at 1 (800) 782-4356, or online at *www.helminc.com*.

For Canadian Owners

Please contact a dealer to order any manuals that you may require.

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. Operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.
To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.
Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgment.
You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels -** on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages -** preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠ DANGER

You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

⚠ WARNING

You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

⚠ CAUTION

You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings -** such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section -** such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions -** how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

About Other Displays

This mark denotes advice for preventing vehicle damage or malfunction, or that you should be careful when using something.

Indicates that a feature is customizable.

About This Manual

This manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.
This manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.
The images throughout this manual (including the front cover) that depict features, equipment, Audio/Information screen details, and Meter screens are only examples and may not be representative of your particular model.
This manual is for vehicles sold in the United States and Canada.
The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

System Updates Terms & Conditions

General

Your vehicle has an application that allows your System Updates to automatically search for Honda software updates that are specific to your System Updates and its connected devices (when you set the power mode to ON, via Wi-Fi or every four (4) weeks via Telematics Control Unit (TCU)*, queries may occur more or less frequently due to internet outages, retries, direct user action, WAP push from the server, or a change in query policy on the Honda servers). This application periodically transmits to our servers a limited amount of vehicle and device information (Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), the Model Type (MT) Identification Number, Hardware and Software Part Number, Serial Number, Software Version, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, Transaction Log (alert or update viewing, update download and installation, software status), etc.). When the application finds an update from the server, the application initially asks permission to download and install the update. Where available, in your settings menu you may elect to automatically download and install these updates or you may elect to manually update the system.

When your System Updates searches our servers for updates or alerts, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update your devices or transmit the update or alert directly to your System Updates. We will also maintain on our servers a log of the updates or alerts that are installed.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy notice are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy notice. Our privacy notice sets out information about how we and any named third-parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us via the application. For further details, see Honda's connected product privacy notice at:

U.S.:	*https://www.honda.com/privacy/connected-product-privacy-notice*
Canada:	*https://www.honda.ca/privacy/vehicledata* (English)
	https://www.honda.ca/fr/confidentialite/politiquedeconfidentialité (French)

Honda collects, uses, and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

- to deliver system updates and related services
- to allow us to improve and optimize system updates products and services
- to respond to user questions and complaints
- for internal record keeping
- where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights

*: Not available on all models

- as otherwise described in Honda's Privacy Notice and Vehicle Data Privacy Notice

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation), and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements.
Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the system updates, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other use of system updates.
Honda may share this data with Honda's worldwide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third-parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR).
The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. **The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:**

- **How various systems in your vehicle were operating;**
- **Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;**
- **How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,**
- **How fast the vehicle was traveling.**

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.
To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.
The data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential. Some diagnostic and maintenance information is uploaded to Honda upon vehicle start up.

California Perchlorate Contamination Prevention Act

The airbags, seat belt tensioners, and CR type batteries in this vehicle may contain perchlorate materials - special handling may apply. See *www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate*

Software End User License Agreement

Your vehicle comes equipped with software, which is governed by the End User License Agreement in this Owner's Manual, and which contains a binding arbitration clause. Please refer to the End User License Agreement for the terms and conditions governing your use of the installed software, as well as the applications, services, functions, and content provided through the software. Your use of the installed software will serve as your consent to the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement.
You may opt out within 30 days of your initial use of the Software by sending a signed, written notice to HONDA at American Honda Motor Co., Inc., Honda Automobile Customer Service, Mail Stop CHI-5, 1919 Torrance Blvd., Torrance, CA 90501-2746.

Privacy Notice

This vehicle may share location and usage information. To manage this setting, visit:

U.S.:	*https://www.honda.com/privacy/connected-product-privacy-notice*
Canada:	*https://www.honda.ca/privacy/vehicledata* (English)
	https://www.honda.ca/fr/confidentialite/politiquedeconfidentialité (French)

To learn more about how we collect and use Personal Information including precise geolocation data, please read our Privacy Notice and Vehicle Data Privacy Notice, accessible at:

U.S.: ***https://www.honda.com/privacy/connected-product-privacy-notice***

Canada: ***https://www.honda.ca/privacy/vehicledata*** **(English)**

https://www.honda.ca/fr/confidentialite/politiquedeconfidentialité **(French)**

Contents

1 Before Driving 15

About the Hybrid System ▶ **16** | Check Before Driving ▶ **21** | Child Safety ▶ **29** | Airbags ▶ **40** | Safety Labels ▶ **53** | Key ▶ **54** | Locking/Unlocking ▶ **59** | Steering Wheel ▶ **68** | Seats ▶ **69** | Seat Belts ▶ **78** | Mirrors ▶ **85** | Windows ▶ **87** | Trunk ▶ **90** | Maximum Load Limit ▶ **92** | Towing a Trailer ▶ **95**

2 Driving Operation 96

Turn Power System On or Off ▶ **97** | Shifting ▶ **102** | Braking ▶ **104** | Starting and Driving ▶ **111** | Parking Your Vehicle ▶ **113** | Rear View Camera ▶ **114** | Refueling ▶ **116** | Turn Signals/Light Switches ▶ **120** | Wipers and Washers ▶ **126** | Defroster ▶ **130** | Driving Features ▶ **132**

3 Controls 142

Interior Lights ▶ **143** | Interior Convenience Items ▶ **145** | Seat Heaters/Ventilators* ▶ **152** | Heated Steering Wheel* ▶ **154** | Moonroof ▶ **155** | Climate Control System ▶ **157** | In-Vehicle Infotainment ▶ **161** | 12.3" Color Touchscreen Basic Operations ▶ **169** | 12.3" Color Touchscreen Other Operations ▶ **190** | 12.3" Color Touchscreen Customized Features ▶ **202** | General Information on the Audio System ▶ **212**

4 Safety Driving Assist System 230

Honda Sensing® ▶ **231** | Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) ▶ **238** | Low Speed Braking Control* ▶ **244** | Road Departure Mitigation System ▶ **248** | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ▶ **252** | Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ▶ **263** | Traffic Jam Assist ▶ **267** | Traffic Sign Recognition System ▶ **271** | Blind Spot Information System ▶ **275** | Cross Traffic Monitor ▶ **278** | Parking Sensor System* ▶ **281**

5 About Your Instrument Panel 284

Indicators ▶ **285** | Gauges ▶ **293** | Driver Information Interface ▶ **297** | Head-Up Display* ▶ **307**

6 Maintenance 311

Before Performing Maintenance ▶ **312** | Maintenance Minder™ ▶ **315** | Maintenance Under the Hood ▶ **320** | Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades ▶ **331** | Checking and Maintaining Tires ▶ **333** | 12-Volt Battery ▶ **343** | Climate Control System Maintenance ▶ **345** | Cleaning ▶ **346**

7 Handling the Unexpected 349

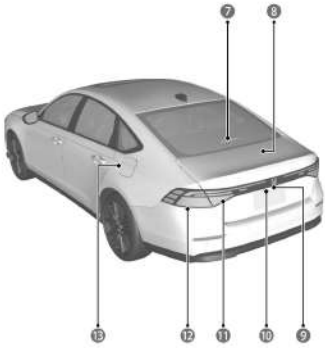
Tools ▶ **350** | When a Lightbulb Goes Out ▶ **351** | Remote Transmitter Care ▶ **352** | If a Tire Goes Flat ▶ **354** | Handling of the jack ▶ **363** | Power System Won't Start ▶ **364** | If the 12-volt Battery Is Dead ▶ **367** | Shift Lever Does Not Move ▶ **369** | Overheating ▶ **370** | When a Warning Appears ▶ **372** | Fuses ▶ **374** | Emergency Towing ▶ **380** | If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door ▶ **381** | If You Cannot Open the Trunk ▶ **382** | Refueling ▶ **383** | Emergency Call (eCall) ▶ **384**

8 Vehicle Information 386

Specifications ▶ **387** | Identification Numbers ▶ **389** | Devices that Emit Radio Waves ▶ **390** | Reporting Safety Defects ▶ **391** | Emissions Testing ▶ **393** | Warranty Coverages ▶ **394** | Customer Service Information ▶ **396** | Open Source License ▶ **398**

*: Not available on all models

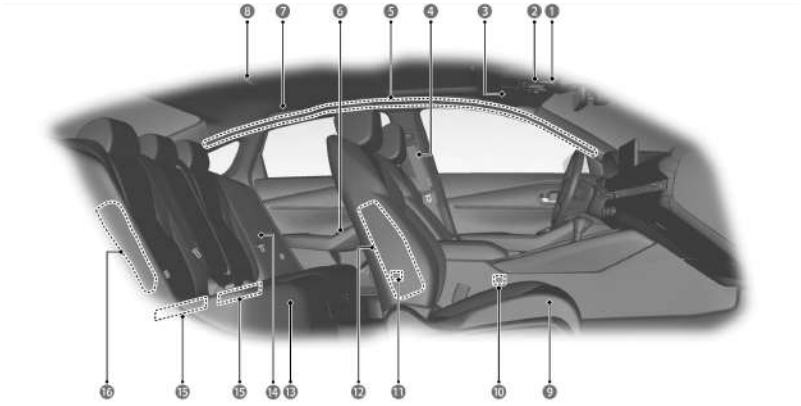
Visual Index



1	Maintenance Under the Hood	▶320
2	Windshield Wipers	▶126
		▶331
3	Power Door Mirrors	▶85
	Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights*	▶120
		▶351
4	Door Lock/Unlock Control	▶59
5	Tires	▶333
		▶354
6	Headlights	▶120
		▶351
	Front Turn Signal Lights	▶120
		▶351
	Parking/Daytime Running Lights	▶120
		▶123
		▶351
	Front Side Marker Lights	▶120
		▶351

7	High-Mount Brake Light	▶351
8	Opening/Closing the Trunk	▶90
	Emergency Trunk Opener	▶91
9	Rear License Plate Light	▶351
	Trunk Release Button	▶90
10	Rear View Camera	▶114
11	Taillights	▶120
		▶351
	Back-Up Lights	▶351
12	Brake Lights	▶351
	Rear Side Marker/Taillights	▶120
		▶351
	Rear Turn Signal Lights	▶120
		▶351
13	How to Refuel	▶117

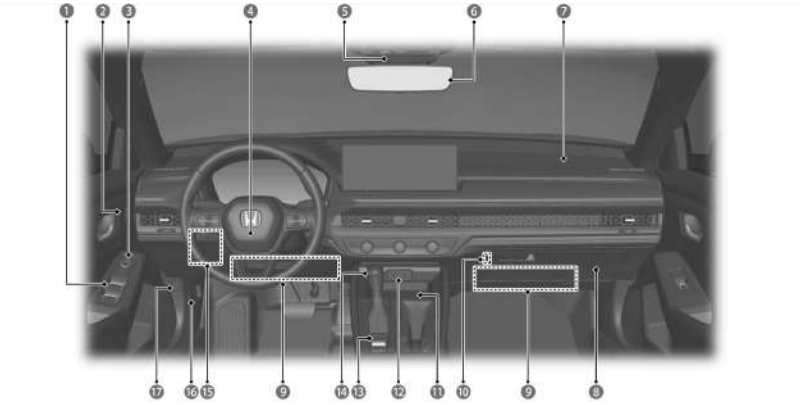
*: Not available on all models



1	Interior Light	▶143
	Map Lights	▶143
2	Moonroof Switch	▶155
	SOS Button	▶385
	Sunglasses Holder	▶149
3	Sun Visors	
	Vanity Mirrors	
4	Seat Belts	▶78
5	Side Curtain Airbags	▶48
6	Rear Seat Heater Buttons*	▶153
7	Grab Handles	
	Coat Hook	▶149

8	Interior Light	▶143
9	Front Seat	▶71
10	Accessory Power Socket	▶145
11	USB Ports	▶164
12	Front Side Airbags	▶47
13	Rear Seat	▶73
14	Seat Belt (Installing a Child Seat)	▶35
	Seat Belt to Secure a Child Seat	▶36
15	LATCH to Secure a Child Seat	▶32
16	Rear Side Airbags	▶47

*: Not available on all models

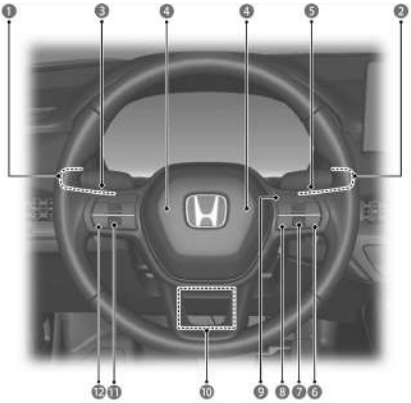


1	Master Door Lock Switch	▶64
	Power Window Switches	▶87
2	Driving Position Memory System*	▶76
3	Door Mirror Controls	▶85
4	Driver's Front Airbag	▶42
5	OFF / Passenger Airbag Off Indicator	▶50
6	Rearview Mirror	▶85
7	Passenger's Front Airbag	▶42
8	Glove Box	▶145
9	Knee Airbags	▶45
10	MAIN Trunk Main Switch	▶91
11	Wireless Charger	▶146
12	USB Ports	▶164
13	**DRIVE MODE** Switch	▶132
	e-Button	▶132
	Electric Parking Brake Switch	▶104
	Automatic Brake Hold Button	▶107
14	Shift Lever	▶102
15	Interior Fuse Box	▶376
16	Hood Release Handle	▶321
17	Trunk Opener	▶90

*: Not available on all models

1	Head-Up Display*	▶307
2	System Indicators	▶285
	Gauges	▶293
	Driver Information Interface	▶297
3	**POWER** Button	▶97
4	Audio System	▶162
5	Hazard Warning Button	
6	Front Seat Heater/ Ventilator* Buttons	▶152
7	Climate Control System	▶157
	ON/OFF (**ON/OFF**) Button	▶158
	FRONT Front Defogger Button	▶130
	REAR Rear Defogger/ Heated Door Mirror* Button	▶130
8	Steering Wheel Adjustments	▶68

*: Not available on all models



❶	Headlights	▶120
	Turn Signals	▶120
❷	Wipers/ Washers	▶126
❸	Deceleration Paddle Selector	▶134
❹	Horn (Press an area around)	
❺	Deceleration Paddle Selector	▶134
❻	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button	▶263
❼	Right Selector Wheel	▶297
❽	Interval Button	▶256
❾	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Buttons	▶253
❿	Heated Steering Wheel Button*	▶154
⓫	Left Selector Wheel	▶165
⓬	(Talk) Button	▶177
		▶185
		▶195
		▶195
		▶197
	Audio Remote Controls	▶165

*: Not available on all models

Before Driving

About the Hybrid System

SPORT HYBRID i-MMD (intelligent Multi-Mode Drive) 16
Driving Mode 17
High Voltage System and Battery 18

Check Before Driving

For Safe Driving 21
Your Vehicle's Safety Features 22
Driving Preparation 23
Precautions While Driving 25
Exhaust Gas Hazard 26
Modifications and Accessories 26

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers 29
Safety of Infants and Small Children 30
Installing a Child Seat 32
Safety of Larger Children 37

Airbags

About Your Airbags 40
Airbag System Components 40
Front Airbags (SRS) 42
Knee Airbags 45
Side Airbags 47
Side Curtain Airbags 48
Airbag System Indicators 49
Airbag Care 51

Safety Labels

Label Locations 53

Key

Details on the Key 54
Built-in Key 58
Key Number Tag 58

Locking/Unlocking

Using the Remote Transmitter 59
Using the Keyless Access System 59
Locking the Doors and Trunk (Walk Away Auto Lock®) 61
Lock Presetting 62
Unlocking the Doors Using a Key 63
Locking a Door Without Using a Key 63
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 64
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 65
Childproof Door Locks 66
What to Do If 66

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel 68

Seats

Adjusting the Seat 69
Adjusting the Front Seat Positions 71
Adjusting the Rear Seat Positions 73
Driving Position Memory System* 75
Rear Seat Reminder 77

Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts 78
Fastening a Seat Belt 81
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor 83
Seat Belt Inspection 83

Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirror 85
Power Door Mirrors 85

Windows

Opening/Closing the Power Windows 87
Opening the Windows with the Remote 89

Trunk

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Trunk 90

Maximum Load Limit

About Maximum Load Limit 92

Towing a Trailer

About Towing a Trailer 95
Towing Behind a Motorhome 95

*: Not available on all models

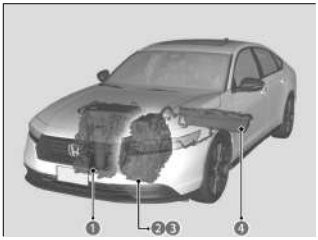
About the Hybrid System

SPORT HYBRID i-MMD (intelligent Multi-Mode Drive)

Your SPORT HYBRID i-MMD vehicle uses both an electric motor and a gasoline engine as propulsion sources, with the electric motor receiving electricity from an internal High Voltage battery and/or internal generator. The High Voltage battery is charged from the generator driven by the engine or regenerative braking. When driving, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the electric motor, exclusively by the gasoline engine, or by a combination of the two.
Also, you can press the **e** button to manually enable EV (driven only on electricity) mode.

AUTO/EV/CHARGE Mode ►P.132

Components



1 Gasoline Engine:
Runs the generator, and under certain conditions, drives the wheels directly.

2 Generator:
Starts the engine and generates electric power when driven by the gasoline engine to supply electricity to power the electric motor and/or to charge the High Voltage battery.

3 Electric Motor:
Provides direct power to the wheels (together with the engine in some cases). Also, the electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.

4 High Voltage Battery:
The High Voltage battery stores electricity and supplies electricity to the motor.

High voltage parts and high voltage wires in this vehicle are sheathed in electromagnetic shielding material; therefore, the amount of electromagnetic waves emitted is no greater than those emitted by household appliances or the electrical parts in conventional vehicles.

Battery types

There are two types of batteries used in this vehicle: a standard 12-volt battery that powers the airbags, the interior and exterior lights, and other standard 12-volt systems: and the High Voltage battery that is used to power the propulsion motor and recharge the 12-volt battery.

Sounds Unique to the SPORT HYBRID i-MMD System

You may hear the following sounds when turning on the power system, or driving.

When starting and stopping the engine:
The sound of the powertrain operating can be heard coming from the front of the vehicle.

At acceleration:
Motor and engine operating sounds can be heard coming from inside the engine compartment.

At deceleration:
To regenerate energy, the sounds of motor regeneration can be heard coming from inside the engine compartment. Also, when depressing the brake pedal while driving at low speeds, or when changing the braking system to regenerative braking, you may hear a sound coming from the brakes.

Climate control system in operation:
The sound of the compressor and/or heating system operating can be heard coming from inside the engine compartment.

Energy Efficiency

As with a gasoline-powered vehicle, hybrid vehicle fuel efficiency and driving range is most impacted by your driving style. Aggressive acceleration and high-speed driving can easily trigger the system to switch the propulsion source to the gasoline-powered engine.
In addition, heavy climate control system use negatively affects vehicle range and efficiency. Either of these use patterns will more quickly reduce the High Voltage battery's state of charge.

Driving Mode

When driving, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the electric motor, exclusively by the gasoline engine, or by a combination of the two. The system selects which propulsion source is most appropriate and automatically switches to it. Under appropriate conditions, pressing the **e** button will switch the vehicle to **EV** mode.

» Depending on the climate control system, High Voltage battery, and driving conditions, the engine will start and stop automatically.

AUTO/EV/CHARGE Mode ►P.132

Electric Vehicle (EV) driving mode

When parked or while driving at low speeds, the **EV** indicator comes on and the vehicle is powered only by the motor.

Hybrid (HV) driving mode

When driving under high load conditions (such as when accelerating or going uphill), the engine operates and runs the generator. The generator then provides that electricity to the motor to help run the motor when driving. It also charges the High Voltage battery.

Engine (Direct Drive) driving mode

When driving at high speeds under light load conditions, the vehicle is powered mainly by the engine. Also depending on the situation, electricity from the High Voltage battery helps the motor run, or the motor acts as a generator that charges the High Voltage battery.

Regeneration driving mode

When the accelerator pedal is not being operated while decelerating or descending a hill, the motor acts as a generator and operates regenerative braking, and the electricity gained through regenerative braking is provided to the High Voltage battery.

Deceleration Paddle Selector ►P.134

» The regenerative braking feature works similarly to engine braking. The rate of deceleration can be changed by using the deceleration paddle selector.

High Voltage System and Battery

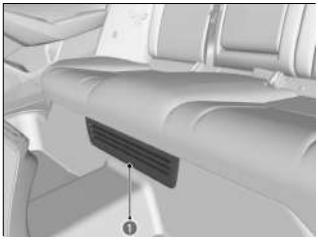
Characteristics of High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery charge level will become low. Extended periods of time at a low state of charge will shorten battery life. To maintain the battery state of charge, drive your vehicle for more than 30 minutes at least once every three months.
Extreme high temperatures can affect the battery life. You can minimize the effects by parking the vehicle in the shade during the summer.

Be careful not to let the High Voltage battery drain too much.
If the battery level becomes close to zero, it will make it impossible to start the engine.

Safety Precautions

Attempting to take a High Voltage system component apart or disconnect one of its wires can cause severe electrical shock. Make sure that any maintenance or repairs to the High Voltage system are performed by a Honda dealer.



Do not cover the air intake (1).
If the air intake is obstructed during vehicle operation, the High Voltage battery can become too hot. To protect the battery, the system may start to limit the battery's output and cause the **POWER SYSTEM** indicator and 12-volt battery charging system indicator to come on.

⚠ WARNING

If a severe crash damages your vehicle's High Voltage system, there is a possibility of electrical shock due to exposed High Voltage components or orange wires. If this happens, do not touch any of the High Voltage system components or any of its orange wires.
The High Voltage battery contains a flammable electrolyte that could leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid skin or eye contact with the electrolyte as it is corrosive. If you accidentally come into contact with the electrolyte, rinse the exposed skin and flush any exposed eyes with copious amounts of water for a few minutes, and seek medical attention immediately.

Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.
Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with even a small quantity of water, from a garden hose for instance, can be dangerous.

Any time the vehicle is damaged in a crash, have it repaired by a dealer.

Emergency Shutdown System for the High Voltage System

If the vehicle is involved in a crash, the emergency shutdown system will activate depending on the severity of the impact. When the system activates, the High Voltage system automatically shuts down, and the vehicle can no longer move under its own power. To return the High Voltage system back to normal operation, consult a dealer.

When the vehicle is disposed

Honda collects and recycles High Voltage batteries used in its vehicles – consult a dealer for more information.

Check Before Driving

For Safe Driving

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

Some states, provinces, and territories prohibit the use of cell phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

Restrain all children

Children ages 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in cell phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

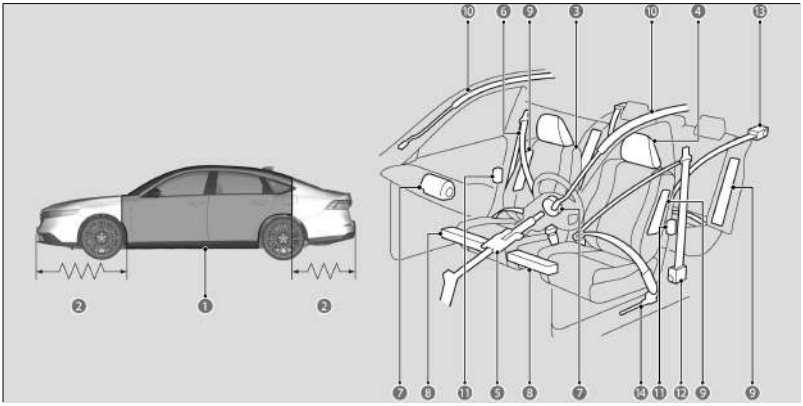
Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets, and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



1. Safety Cage
2. Crush Zones
3. Seats and Seat-Backs
4. Head Restraints
5. Collapsible Steering Column
6. Seat Belts

❼ **Front Airbags**
❽ **Knee Airbags**
❾ **Side Airbags**
❿ **Side Curtain Airbags**
⓫ **Door Locks**
⓬ **Seat Belt Tensioners (Front Seats)**
⓭ **Seat Belt Tensioners (Rear Seats)**
⓮ **Outer Lap Pretensioners**

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.
Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help protect you and your passengers during a crash.
Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front and outer rear seat belts in a sufficient crash.
However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Driving Preparation

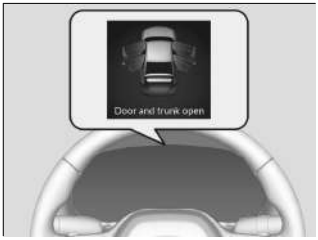
Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - 》 There are blind spots from the inside.
- Make sure the tires are in good condition.
  - 》 Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
  - Checking Tires ▶P.333
- Make sure the hood is securely closed.
  - 》 If the hood opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - 》 Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - 》 Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving or fall off and impact other road users. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - 》 When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the door is not frozen.
  - 》 When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

- Make sure that there are no flammable materials left under the hood.
  » Be especially careful if the vehicle has not been used for a long time, or after maintenance. The heat from the engine and exhaust may cause flammable materials to catch fire, leading to unexpected accidents.

Interior Checks

- After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure all doors are closed and locked. Locking the doors helps prevent an occupant from being ejected and an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door.
  Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside ►P.64



- If the door and/or trunk open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the trunk is not completely closed. Close all doors and the trunk tightly until the message disappears.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  Adjusting the Front Seat Positions ►P.71
  Adjusting the Seat ►P.69
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the center of the head restraint aligns with the center of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  Adjusting the Front Seat Positions ►P.71
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  Fastening a Seat Belt ►P.81
- Protect children by using seat belts or child seats according to a child's age, height, and weight.
  Protecting Child Passengers ►P.29
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  » An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  » Carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe.
- Do not pile items higher than the seatback height.
  » They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.

- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  » Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
  Interior Rearview Mirror ►P.85
  Power Door Mirrors ►P.85
  Adjusting the Steering Wheel ►P.68
- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  » They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the operation of the seats, or the operation of the sensors under the seats.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  » They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  » Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
  Indicator List ►P.285

About Headlight Adjustment

Headlight aim

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the trunk, have the aim readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Precautions While Driving

In Rain

Avoid driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the motor or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.
If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up, causing the system to go into a protective mode and make the steering wheel progressively harder to operate.
» Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.
» Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colorless, odorless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever:

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the trunk open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the trunk open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

[1] Select the fresh air mode.
[2] Select the mode.
[3] Set the fan speed to high.
[4] Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

⚠ WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.
Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

Do not run the engine with the garage door closed.
An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Modifications and Accessories

Modifications

- Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-Genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.
- Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance.

- Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet federal, state, province, territory, and local regulations.
- The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, a drained 12-volt battery, or other unexpected problems.
- Do not modify or attempt to repair your vehicle's high voltage hybrid power system or otherwise modify vehicle electrical systems. Disassembling or modifying electrical equipment can result in a crash or a fire.

If you ever need to replace your vehicle's High Voltage battery assembly outside of warranty coverage, we highly recommend that you only use a genuine Honda High Voltage battery assembly. Genuine Honda High Voltage battery assemblies are designed to work with your vehicle's hybrid power system and have been designed, engineered, and manufactured to avoid overcharging situations. Non-genuine High Voltage battery assemblies may not have been similarly designed, engineered, and manufactured, and installation of such assemblies could result in overcharging, fires, loss of power, or other conditions that may increase the likelihood of a crash or injury.

⚠ WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.
Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

⚠ WARNING

Use of improperly designed, engineered or manufactured High Voltage battery assemblies could cause a fire in your vehicle.
A vehicle fire could result in a crash or injury.
Only use a genuine Honda High Voltage battery assembly, or its equivalent, in your vehicle.

Honda Genuine Accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation of your vehicle.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.

- Do not install any items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle over areas containing airbags.
  Items other than Honda Genuine Accessories designated for your vehicle installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  Checking Fuses ▶P.374
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

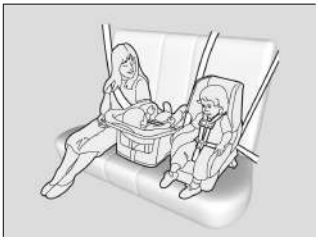
If any Honda Genuine Accessories become inoperable, refer to the separate accessory owner's manual (if applicable) or consult a dealer for assistance to troubleshoot the potential faulty condition.

Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children ages 12 and under.
To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state and Canadian province and territory requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.
Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:

- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.



- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt correctly must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle using either the seat belt or the lower anchors of the LATCH system.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows, or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children ages 12 and under be properly restrained in a rear seat. Some states or provinces/territories have laws restricting where children may ride.
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards and child safety, your vehicle has warning labels on the dashboard (U.S. models) and on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.
Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

⚠ WARNING

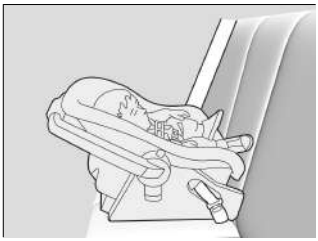
Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.
Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

Safety of Infants and Small Children

Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child seat until the infant reaches the seat manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.

Positioning a rear-facing child seat



Child seats must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

Experts recommend use of a rear-facing seat for a child so long as the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing seat.
Infants should never be seated in a forward-facing position.
Always refer to the child seat manufacturer's instructions before installation.
Do not allow a front seat to rest against a child seat installed in a rear seating position.
The weight sensor in the front seat may not correctly detect the actual weight of the occupant.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position. Make sure that there is no contact between the child seat and the seat in front of it.
It can also interfere with proper operation of the passenger's advanced front airbag system.

About Your Airbags ▶P.40

If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.

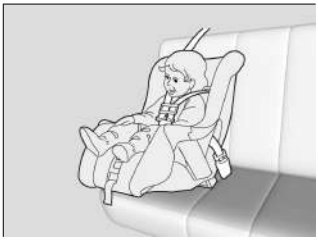
⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a crash.
Always place a rear-facing child seat in the rear seat, not the front.

Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child seat, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured forward-facing child seat until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the forward-facing child seat. Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child seat use where you are driving, and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

Forward-facing child seat placement



We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position.

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can be hazardous, even with advanced front airbags that automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

⚠ WARNING

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.
If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Selecting a Child Seat

Most child seats are LATCH-compatible (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children). Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child seats can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child seat manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximizing your child's safety.
In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child seats are required to be designed so that they can be secured with a lap belt or the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt. In addition, the child seat manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach a LATCH-compatible seat once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child seat owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

Important consideration when selecting a child seat

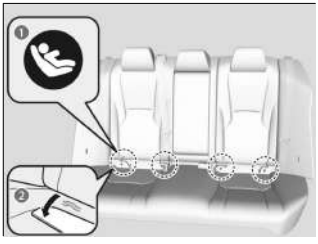
- The child seat is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child seat is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child seat is compliant with Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213.

LATCH-compatible child seats have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

Installing a Child Seat

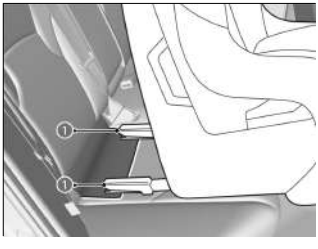
Installing a LATCH-Compatible Child Seat

A LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child seat is attached to the lower anchors with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



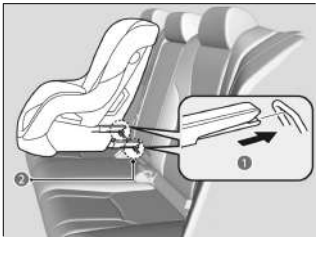
❶ Marks
❷ Cover

[1] Locate the anchor marks affixed to the base of the seat cushion.
[2] Pull out the anchor covers under the marks to expose the lower anchors.

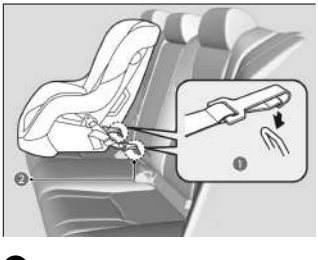


❶ Probes

[3] Place the child seat so that the probes are on the cover.



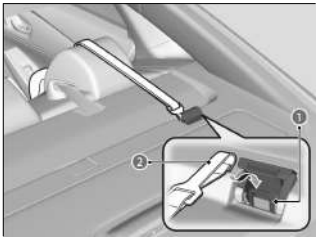
❶ Rigid Type
❷ Lower Anchors



❶ Flexible Type
❷ Lower Anchors

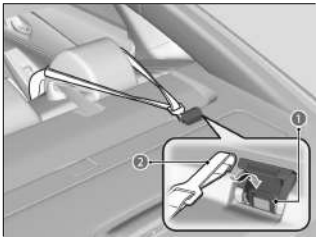
[4] Attach the child seat to the lower anchors according to the instructions that came with the child seat.
- When installing the child seat, make sure that the lower anchors are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.
- Install the child seat so that the gap between it and the seat-back is as small as possible.

▼ Straight top tether type



❶ Anchor
❷ Tether Strap Hook

▼ Other top tether type



❶ Anchor
❷ Tether Strap Hook

[5] Open the tether anchor cover behind the head restraint.

▼ Straight top tether type

[6] Route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint.
Make sure the strap is not twisted.

▼ Other top tether type

[6] Route the tether strap over the side of the head restraint.
Make sure the strap is not twisted.

▼ All types

[7] Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.
[8] Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.
[9] Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
[10] Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

⚠ WARNING

Using the outer rear seats' inner anchors to secure a LATCH-compatible child seat in the center seating position may result in failure of the child seat, causing injury or death.
Only use the outer rear seats' inner anchors to install a child seat in the center seating position if the manufacturer's instructions expressly permit.

Installing a LATCH-compatible child seat in the rear center seat

Each outer rear seat is equipped with a pair of lower anchors which are used to secure a LATCH-compatible child seat. The rear center seat, however, is not equipped with anchors of any kind.
The inner and outer anchors are spaced apart at a standard distance of 11 inches (280 mm). The distance between the two inner anchors is 15.4 inches (390 mm).

LATCH-compatible restraint systems that are fitted with rigid-type attachments cannot be installed in the rear center seat. However, a system fitted with flexible-type attachments can be installed in the center seat, provided that the manufacturer's instructions for that system permit the use of the inner anchors with the stated spacing.
Before seating a child, make sure that the system is properly attached to both the lower anchors and tether anchors.
For your child's safety, when using a child seat installed using the LATCH system, make sure that the child seat is properly secured to the vehicle.
A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

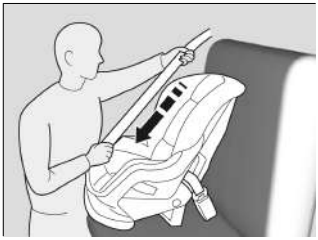
⚠ WARNING

Never attach two child seats to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child seat can be installed with a lap/shoulder belt in any rear seat or, if absolutely necessary, the front passenger seat.

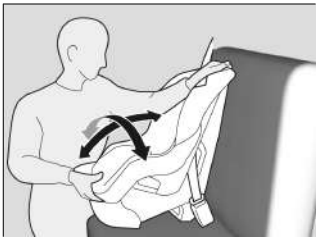
[1] Place the child seat on the vehicle seat.
[2] Route the seat belt through the child seat according to the seat manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
» Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.



[3] Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
[4] Let the seat belt retract a few inches and check that the retractor has switched modes by pulling on the webbing. It should not pull out again until it is reset by removing the latch plate from the buckle.
» If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Slowly pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 3 – 4.

[5] Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.

» When doing this, place your weight on the child seat and push it into the vehicle seat.

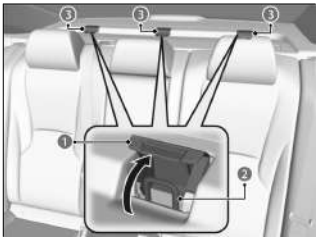


[6] Make sure the child seat is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; less than one inch of movement should occur near the seat belt.

[7] Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.

A child seat that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.
To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

Adding Security with a Tether



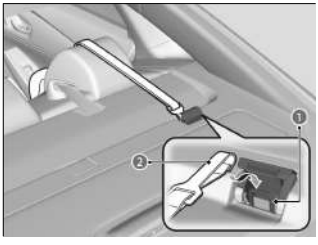
A tether anchor point is provided behind each rear seating position.
If you have a child seat that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

[1] Locate the appropriate tether anchor point and lift the cover.

1 Cover
2 Anchor
3 Tether Anchor Points

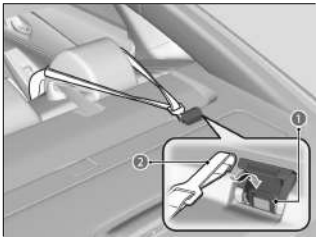
Always use a tether for forward-facing child seats whether using the seat belt or lower anchors.

▼ **Straight top tether type**



❶ Anchor
❷ Tether Strap Hook

▼ **Other top tether type**



❶ Anchor
❷ Tether Strap Hook

▼ **Straight top tether type**

[2] Route the tether strap over the top of the head restraint. Make sure the strap is not twisted.

▼ **Other top tether type**

[2] Route the tether strap over the side of the head restraint. Make sure the strap is not twisted.

▼ **All types**

[3] Secure the tether strap hook to the anchor.
[4] Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child seat manufacturer.

Safety of Larger Children

Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child seat, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.

Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Booster Seats

If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.

- When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly. There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

Some U.S. states and Canadian provinces and territories require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g., 6 years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the state, province, or territory where you intend to drive.

Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

⚠ WARNING

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.
If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, and use a booster seat if needed.

Airbags

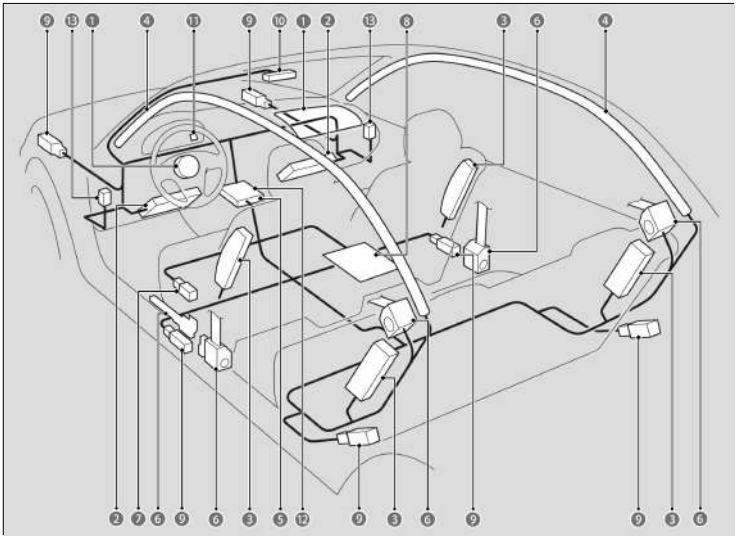
About Your Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with four types of airbags:

- Front airbags: Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- Knee airbags: Airbags under the steering column and under the glove box.
- Side airbags: Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's outer seat-backs and next to the outer rear seating positions.
- Side curtain airbags: Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.
The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.
After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Airbag System Components



The front, driver's knee, front passenger's knee, side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. Both side curtain airbags are deployed in a rollover. The airbag system includes:

❶Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
❷Two knee airbags. The driver's knee airbag is stored under the steering column; the front passenger's knee airbag is stored under the glove box. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
❸Four side airbags. One for the driver, one for the front passenger, and two for the rear outboard seating positions. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. All are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
❹Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
❺An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, rollover sensor, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event, the unit can record such information.
❻Seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats.
❼Driver's seat position sensor. This sensor detects the driver's seat slide position to help determine the optimal deployment of the driver's airbag.
❽Weight sensors in the front passenger's seat. The sensors are used for occupant classification to activate or deactivate the front passenger's airbag.
❾Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
❿An indicator on the roof console that alerts you that the front passenger's front airbag has been turned off.
⓫An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
⓬A rollover sensor that can detect if your vehicle is about to roll over and signal the control unit to deploy both side curtain airbags.
⓭Pressure sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.
What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible. Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.
Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front, driver's knee, and front passenger's knee airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.
Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.
When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Front Airbags (SRS)

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.
The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.
During a frontal crash severe enough to cause one or both front airbags to deploy, the airbags can inflate at different rates, depending on the severity of the crash, whether or not the seat belts are latched, and/or other factors. Frontal airbags are designed to supplement the seat belts to help reduce the likelihood of head and chest injuries in frontal crashes.

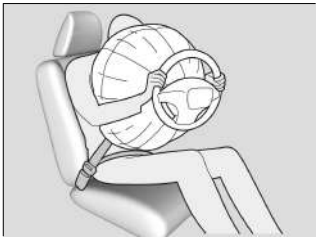
Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the center of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.
A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.
The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.
Although the driver's and front passenger's airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy. This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.
Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move toward the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move toward the side of the vehicle.
Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.
Rollovers: In a rollover, your best form of protection is a seat belt or, if your vehicle is equipped with a rollover sensor, both a seat belt and a side curtain airbag. Front airbags, however, are not designed to deploy in a rollover as they would provide little, if any, protection.

When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

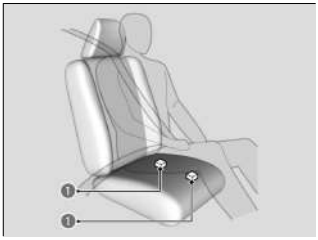
Advanced Airbags

The airbags have advanced features to help reduce the likelihood of airbag related injuries to smaller occupants.

1 Driver's Seat Position Sensor

The driver's advanced airbag system includes a seat position sensor.
Based on information from this sensor and the severity of the impact, the advanced airbag system determines the optimal deployment of the driver's airbag.
The front passenger's advanced airbag system has weight sensors. The sensors are used for occupant classification to activate or deactivate the front passenger's airbag. For adult size occupants, the system will automatically activate the front passenger's airbag. If a small adult sits in the front passenger seat and the system does not recognize him/her as an adult, see below.

Passenger Airbag Off Indicator ►P.50



1 Passenger's Seat Weight Sensors

We advise against allowing a child age 12 or under to ride in the front passenger's seat. However, if you do allow a small child or infant to ride in the front passenger's seat, the system is designed to automatically deactivate the front passenger's airbag. Do not let a small child or infant ride in the front passenger's seat if the airbag does not automatically deactivate.

If there is a problem with the driver's seat position sensor or the passenger's seat weight sensors, the SRS indicator will come on, and in the event of a crash, the airbag will deploy (regardless of the driver's seating position or passenger's occupant classification) with a force corresponding to the severity of the impact.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator ►P.50

For the advanced front airbags to work properly, confirm that:

- The occupant is sitting in an upright position wearing the seat belt properly and the seat-back is not excessively reclined.
- The occupant is not leaning against the door or center console.
- The occupant's feet are placed on the floor in front of them.
- There are no objects hanging from the front passenger's seat.
- Only small, lightweight objects are in the seat-back pocket.
- The steering wheel and passenger's side dashboard are not obstructed by any object.
- No liquid has been spilled on or under the seat.
- There is no child seat or other object pressing against the rear of the seat or seat-back.
- There is no rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.
- There are no objects placed under or beside the front passenger's seat. Improperly positioned objects can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- The head restraint is not contacting the roof.

  Passenger Airbag Off Indicator ►P.50

- The floor mat behind the front passenger's seat is set in the correct position evenly on the floor. An improperly placed mat can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.

  Floor mats ►P.347

Knee Airbags

The knee SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help keep the driver and/or front passenger in the proper position and to help maximize the benefit provided by the vehicle's other safety features.
SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.
Do not attach accessories on or near a knee airbag as they can interfere with the proper operation of the airbag, or even hurt someone if the airbag inflates.
The driver and front passenger should not store any items under the seat or behind their feet. The items can interfere with proper airbag deployment in the event of a moderate to severe frontal collision and may result in inadequate protection.

Housing Locations

The knee airbag for the driver and the one for the front passenger are housed under the steering column and the glove box respectively.
Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Operation

The driver's and front passenger's knee airbags deploy at the same time as the driver's and front passenger's airbags respectively.

❶ Knee Airbag

❶ Knee Airbag

Even if the collision is not severe enough to deploy the front airbag, the knee airbag may inflate alone.

When knee airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed objects that cause a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

When knee airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

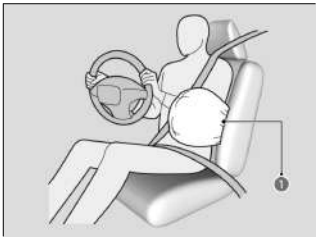
Side Airbags

The side airbags help protect the torso and pelvis of the driver, front passenger, or an outer rear seat occupant during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations

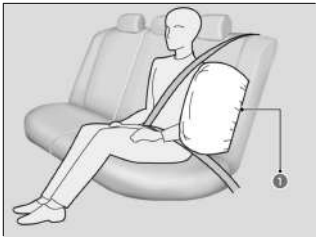
The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs and next to the outer rear seating positions.
Each is marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Operation



❶ Side Airbag

When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.



❶ Side Airbag

When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was toward the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Do not cover or replace the front and rear seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering front and rear seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Make sure you and your front seat and rear outboard passengers always sit upright. Leaning into the path of a side airbag can prevent the airbag from deploying properly and increases the risk of serious injury.

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Side airbag deployment is controlled by a pressure sensor inside each front door. Damage or changes to the inside or outside of the doors may negatively affect side airbag deployment. Contact an authorized dealer before changing or repairing a front door.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help protect the heads of the driver and passengers in the outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact. The side curtain airbags equipped in this vehicle are also designed to help reduce the likelihood of partial and complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in crashes, particularly rollover crashes.
If the SRS control unit senses that your vehicle is about to rollover, it immediately deploys both side curtain airbags and activates the seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats.

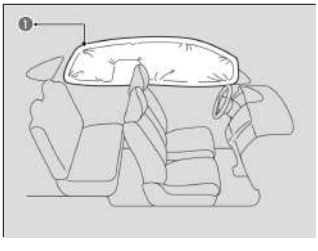
Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts properly and sit upright and well back in their seats.

Housing Locations

The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a rollover or a moderate-to-severe side impact.

1 Side Curtain Airbag

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side curtain airbag deploys even if there are no occupants on that side of the vehicle.

When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

- When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible.
If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Passenger Airbag Off Indicator

When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator comes on to alert you that the passenger's airbag has been turned off.
This occurs if the seat is empty or when the weight sensors determine that a small child or infant is on the passenger seat.

1 U.S.
2 Canada

Children age 12 or under should always ride properly restrained in a back seat.
Protecting Child Passengers ▶P.29

If the indicator is on, in the event of a crash the passenger's airbag will not deploy.
The passenger's knee airbag will not deploy, either.
When you set the power mode to ON, the indicator comes on and goes off a few seconds later to indicate that system checks are being performed. After that, the indicator comes on or off depending on the passenger's occupant classification.
To ensure the passenger is detected properly, confirm that:

- The occupant is sitting in an upright position wearing the seat belt properly and the seat-back is not excessively reclined.
- The occupant is not leaning against the door or center console.
- The occupant's feet are placed on the floor in front of them.
- There are no objects hanging from the front passenger's seat.
- Only small, lightweight objects are in the seat-back pocket.
- No liquid has been spilled on or under the seat.
- There is no child seat or other object pressing against the rear of the seat or seat-back.
- There is no rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.
- There are no objects placed under or beside the front passenger's seat. Improperly positioned objects can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- The floor mat behind the front passenger's seat is set in the correct position evenly on the floor. An improperly placed mat can interfere with the advanced airbag sensors.
- The head restraint is not contacting the roof.

The passenger airbag off indicator may come on and go off periodically if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold. For a small adult, depending on physique and posture, the system may not recognize him/her as an adult and thus deactivate the passenger's airbag.
If this occurs, please confirm that the conditions set forth in the above bullet points previously mentioned are met.
If the above conditions are met and the indicator is still on, then with the transmission in P, set the power mode to OFF and back to ON.
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if:

- All of the above conditions are met, and the indicator comes on with an adult seated in the front passenger seat.
- The seat is empty and the indicator is off.
- The indicator does not come on and go off after setting the power mode to ON as described.

Do not allow an adult passenger to ride in the front seat when the indicator is on.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

When the Airbags Have Deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

When the Vehicle Has Been in a Moderate-to-Severe Collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the driver's seat position sensor, weight sensors in the passenger's seat, seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

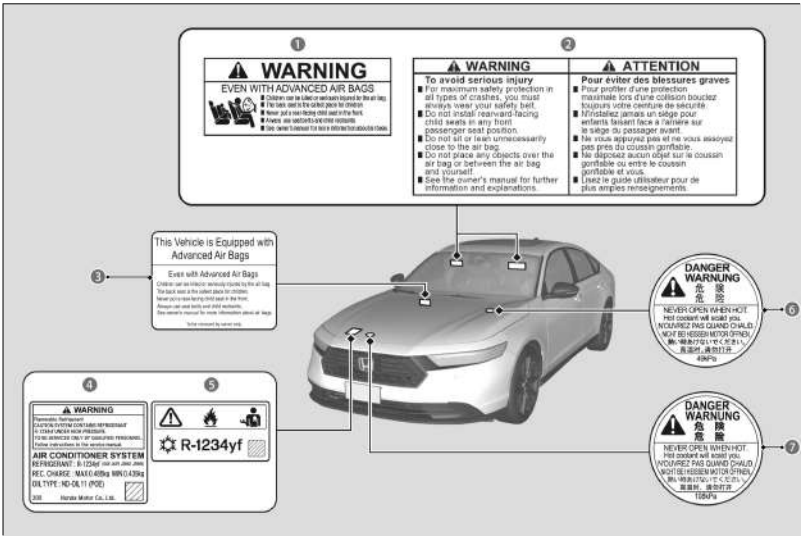
Do Not Remove or Modify a Front Seat Without Consulting a Dealer

This would likely disable or affect the proper operation of the driver's seat position sensor or the weight sensors in the passenger's seat. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact a Honda dealer. For U.S. vehicles, contact American Honda Automobile Customer Service at 1-800-999-1009. For Canadian vehicles, contact Honda Canada Customer Relations at 1-888-9-HONDA-9.

Safety Labels

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.
If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label, which may be removed by the owner), contact a dealer for a replacement.



❶ Sun Visor (U.S. models)

❷ Sun Visor (Canadian models)

❸ Dashboard (U.S. models only)

❹ Air Conditioner System (U.S. models)

❺ Air Conditioner System (Canadian models)

❻ High Voltage System Coolant Tank Cap

❼ Radiator Cap

Key

Details on the Key

Use the keys to turn on and off the power system, and lock and unlock all the doors, trunk, and fuel fill door.

- You can remotely turn the power system on using the remote engine start.

Remote Engine Start ▶P.99

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote to activate the power system, lock and unlock all the doors and the fuel fill door, and open the trunk.
In the following cases, activating the power system, locking/unlocking the doors/fuel fill door, or opening the trunk may be inhibited, or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, cell phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.
Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery.

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust, and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except to replace the battery.

Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.

The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

Keyless Remote Reminder

When the power mode is in ON

If you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, a warning indicator will display in the instrument panel, and warning buzzers will sound from both inside and outside the vehicle.

When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, a warning buzzer will sound from outside the vehicle.

- Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to sound.
- Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also sound even if the remote is within the system's operational range.
- If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the power system has been turned on, you can no longer change the **POWER** button mode or restart the power system. Always make sure that the keyless remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **POWER** button.
- Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Stopping the warning buzzer

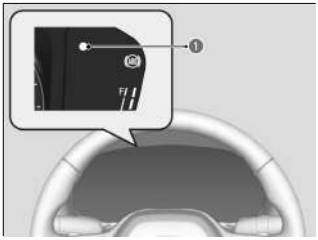
When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

» If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the power system.
Pay attention to the following:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **POWER** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **POWER** button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices, such as televisions and audio systems, emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.



The immobilizer system indicator will blink in the instrument panel if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information when you have pressed **POWER** button.

❶ Immobilizer System Indicator

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

▼ Canadian models

Apply and hold the brake pedal before turning the vehicle on the first time after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.

▼ All models

> ❗ Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the trunk, hood, or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the trunk or doors are opened with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.
Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.
The security system alarm continues for a maximum of two minutes until the security system alarm deactivates.
Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the trunk with the trunk opener or the emergency trunk opener.
- Opening the hood with the hood release.
- Taking the transmission out of **P**.

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may sound once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced.

If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.
Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.
If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.

Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The hood is closed.
- All doors and the trunk are locked from outside with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

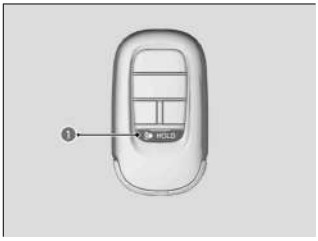
When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is canceled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

Panic mode



1 Panic Button

The panic button on the remote transmitter
If you press the panic button for approximately one second, the following will occur for about 30 seconds:

- The horn sounds.
- Some exterior lights flash.

Canceling panic mode

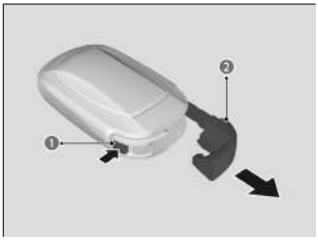
- Press any button on the remote transmitter.

- Set the power mode to ON.

Built-in Key

The built-in key can be used to unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door unlock operation is disabled.

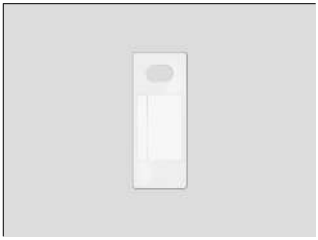
Removing the Built-in Key



To remove the built-in key, push the release button and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

❶ **Release Button**
❷ **Built-in Key**

Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

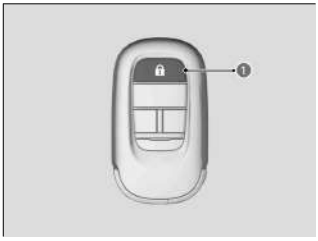
- If you lose your key and you cannot activate the power system, contact a dealer.

> ❗ Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking

Using the Remote Transmitter

Locking the doors



❶ Lock Button

Press the lock button.

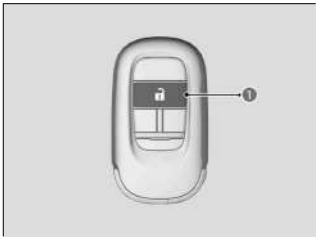
Once:

» Some exterior lights flash; all the doors and fuel fill door lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

» The beeper sounds and verifies the security system is set.

Unlocking the doors



❶ Unlock Button

Press the unlock button.

Once:

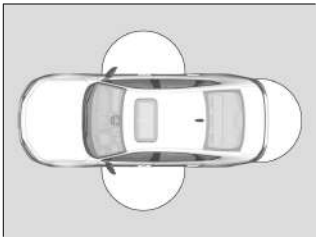
» Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door and fuel fill door unlock.

Twice:

» The remaining doors unlock.

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors will automatically relock.

Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and fuel fill door, and open the trunk.
You can lock/unlock the doors and fuel fill door within a radius of about 32 inches (80 cm) from the outside door handle.
You can open the trunk within about 32 inches (80 cm) radius from the trunk release button.

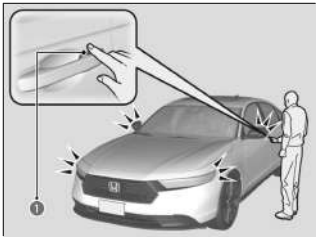
The door may be locked/unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.

The light flash, beep, and door unlock mode settings can be customized using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features ►P.202

Please wipe off any residue such as car shampoo, groundwater, or anti-freeze in the vicinity of the outside door handle, as there is a risk that the keyless access system may not work properly.

Locking the doors and trunk



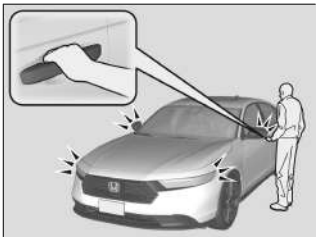
❶ Door Lock Sensor

Touch the door lock sensor on the front door.

» All the doors, fuel fill door, and trunk lock, and the security system sets.

» Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds once.

Unlocking the doors and trunk



Grab the driver's door handle:

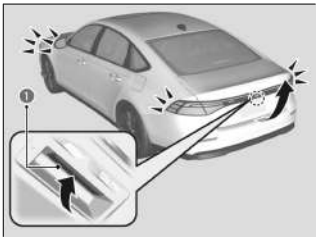
» The driver's door and fuel fill door unlock.

» Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

» All the doors, fuel fill door, and trunk unlock.

» Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.



❶ Trunk Release Button

Press the trunk release button:

» The trunk unlocks and opens.

» Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds once.

Using the Trunk Release Button ►P.90

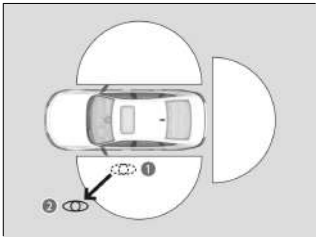
If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and trunk will automatically relock.
You cannot lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system when the power mode is set to any mode other than VEHICLE OFF.

Conditions under which you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and trunk

- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking or locking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to two seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least two seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door might not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 32 inches (80 cm) radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door, door glass, or trunk.

Locking the Doors and Trunk (Walk Away Auto Lock®)

When you walk away from the vehicle that is power mode OFF while carrying the keyless remote, the doors, trunk, and fuel fill door will automatically lock.



[1] While within about 5 feet (1.5 m) radius of the vehicle.
  » The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.

[2] Carry the keyless remote beyond about 5 feet (1.5 m) from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
  » Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors will then lock.

- When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

Auto lock function operation stop beeper

- After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.
  » The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
  » You are located too close to the vehicle.
  » The keyless remote is put inside the trunk.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

- When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be canceled.
- The auto lock function is set to **Off** as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to **On** using the audio/information screen.

If you set the auto lock function to **On** using the audio/information screen, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

Customized Features ►P.202

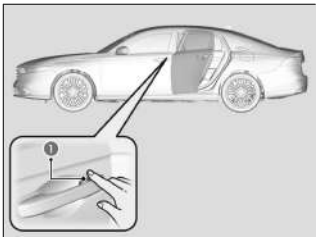
To temporarily deactivate the function:

[1] Set the power mode to OFF.
[2] Open the driver's door.
[3] Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows: Lock ➔ Unlock ➔ Lock ➔ Unlock.
» The beeper sounds, and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function
- With the keyless remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

Lock Presetting



❶ Door Lock Sensor

The vehicle will automatically lock after you lock the doors in advance then close the doors. Activate lock presetting after closing the driver's door.

[1] Touch the door lock sensor or press the lock button on the remote transmitter.
» Alert sounds and lock presetting is activated.
[2] Close all the doors.
» Some exterior lights flash and a beeper sounds when vehicle locks.

Make sure the doors are locked before moving away from the vehicle.

- Lock presetting will be reset if a door is opened before the vehicle has locked completely.

You can turn this function on and off.

Customized Features ►P.202

Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the built-in key instead. The keyhole is behind the door handle.

Pull and hold the outer handle.
Insert the built-in key into the key cylinder from below the handle and then turn it.

» When unlocking, the driver's door and fuel fill door unlock first.

» Turning the key a second time within a few seconds does not unlock the remaining doors.

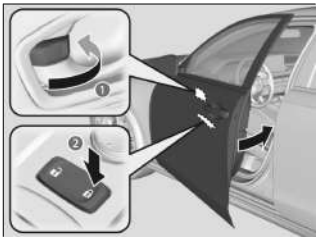
If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will sound.
If the lock button of the keyless remote does not work, refer to the following.

Locking a Door Without Using a Key ►P.63

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.

Locking the front doors



Push the lock tab forward (❶) or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction (❷), and close the door.

» When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and fuel fill door lock at the same time.

Locking the rear doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

Lockout Protection Function

If the vehicle cannot detect the keyless remote, lockout protection activates:

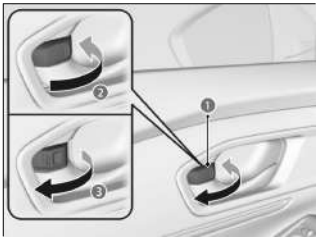
- A beeper sounds, some exterior lights flash, the doors unlock, and a message appears on the driver information interface.
- This allows you to open a door in case the keyless remote is still inside the vehicle.

If you do not open a door, all doors relock after 15 seconds.
To avoid non-detection, make sure to keep the keyless remote away from cell phones and other devices that may cause signal interference.

You can change the lockout protection operation setting.
Customized Features ►P.202

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

Using the lock tab

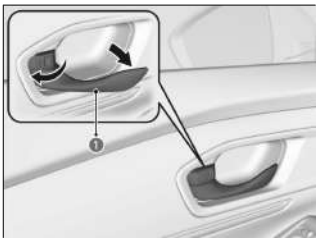


Locking a door: Push the lock tab forward.
Unlocking a door: Pull the lock tab rearward.

- When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and fuel fill door lock at the same time. When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door and fuel fill door will unlock.

❶ Lock Tab
❷ To Lock
❸ To Unlock

Unlocking using the front door inner handle



Pull the front door inner handle.

- The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

❶ Inner Handle

Unlocking and opening the driver's door from the inner handle unlocks all the other doors.
To avoid all the doors unlocking, use the lock tab on the driver's door to unlock, then lock again before opening the door.

This setting works for one time only. If you do not want all the doors to be unlocked all the time, customize the **Auto Door Unlock** setting to **Off** using the audio/information screen.

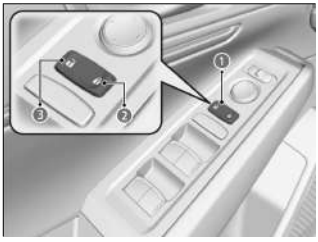
Customized Features ▶P.202

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

Childproof Door Locks ▶P.66

Using the master door lock switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and fuel fill door.

» When you lock/unlock either front door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors, fuel fill door, and trunk lock/unlock at the same time.

❶ Master Door Lock Switch
❷ To Lock
❸ To Unlock

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Your vehicle locks or unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

Drive Lock Mode

All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h).

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking setting.

Customized Features ▶P.202

Driver's Door Open Mode

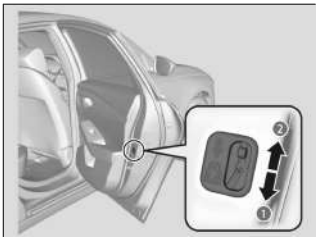
All doors unlock when the driver's door is opened.

You can turn off or change to another auto door unlocking setting.
Customized Features ▶P.202

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

Setting the childproof door locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

❶ Lock
❷ Unlock

- Open the door using the outside door handle.
- To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

What to Do If

The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.
To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.
Childproof Door Locks ▶P.66

Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

The beeper sounds when:
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.

Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?

The beeper sounds if you move outside the walk away auto door lock operating range before the door completely closes.

Locking the Doors and Trunk (Walk Away Auto Lock®) ►P.61

Why is the keyless remote not working properly?

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

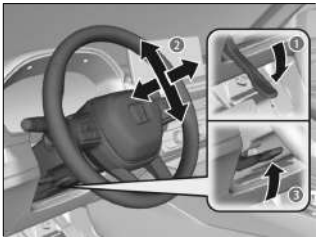
Replacing the Remote Battery ►P.352

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the keyless remote, the range will be reduced.
This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



❶ To Release
❷ Adjust
❸ To Lock

[1] While the vehicle is stopped, push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
» The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.

[2] Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
» Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.

[3] Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
» After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

⚠ WARNING

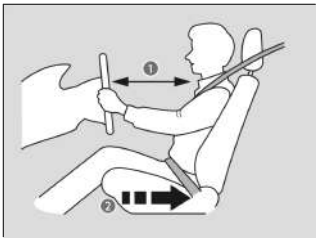
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Seats

Adjusting the Seat

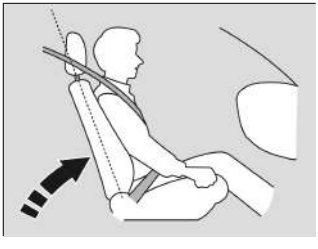
Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

❶ **Allow sufficient space.**
❷ **Move back.**



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.
The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.
The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest.

⚠ WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.
Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

⚠ WARNING

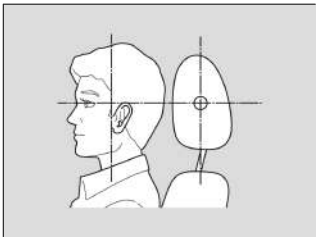
Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.
Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.
In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

Adjusting the front head restraint position



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear impact crash injuries when the center of the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the center height of the restraint.

⚠ WARNING

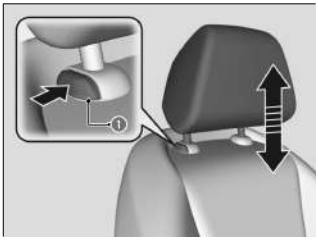
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.
Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to reinstall or correctly reinstall the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.
Always replace the head restraints before driving.

Adjusting the Front Seat Positions

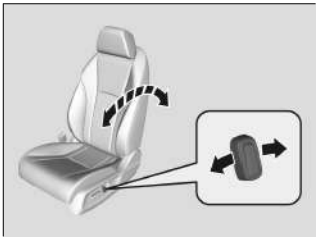
Adjusting the front power seat(s)*



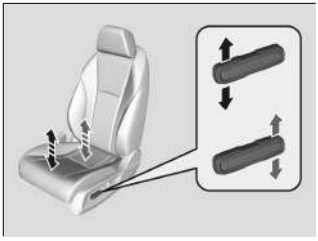
❶ Release Button

To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.
To remove the head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then, push the release button and pull the restraint up and out.
To reinstall a head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button.

» Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.



Seat-back Angle Adjustment
Push forward or pull backward the switch to change the angle.

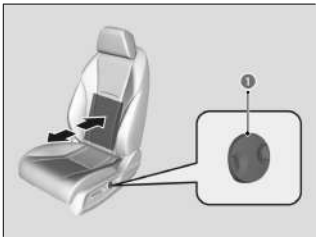


Height Adjustment (Driver's seat only)
Pull up or push down the switch to raise or lower the seat.

Horizontal Position Adjustment
Slide the switch to move the seat.

*: Not available on all models

Lumbar support adjustment (Driver's seat only)

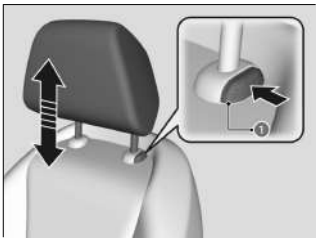


❶ Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch

Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch
Press the front: To increase the entire lumbar support.
Press the rear: To decrease the entire lumbar support.

Adjusting the front manual seat*

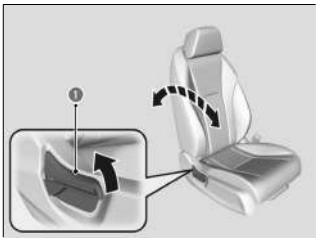
Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.



❶ Release Button

To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.
To remove the head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then, push the release button and pull the restraint up and out.
To reinstall a head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button.

» Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.



❶ Lever

Seat-back Angle Adjustment
Pull up the lever to change the angle.

*: Not available on all models

Horizontal Position Adjustment
Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

1 Bar

Using the front seat armrest

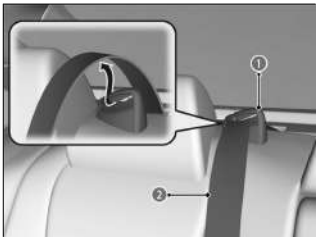
The console lid can be used as an armrest.

Adjusting the Rear Seat Positions

Using the rear seat armrest

Pull down the armrest in the center seat-back.

Folding down the rear seats

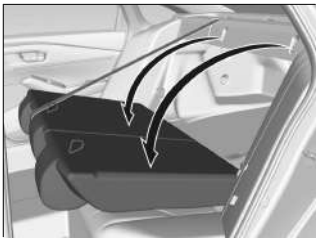


[1] Put the armrest back into the seat-back.
[2] Remove the center shoulder belt from the guide.

❶ Guide
❷ Center Shoulder Belt

[3] Pull the release lever in the trunk to release the lock.

❶ Release Lever



[4] Fold the seat-back down.

The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the trunk.
Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the trunk lid open.

Exhaust Gas Hazard ►P.26

Make sure that the folded seat-back does not press against the front passenger seat, as this can cause the weight sensors in the front passenger seat to work improperly.

Passenger Airbag Off Indicator ►P.50

Remove any items from the rear seat cushion and floor before you fold down the rear seat.
The front seat(s) must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the rear seats as they fold down.
To lock a seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back, and the center shoulder belt is re-positioned in the guide.

> Make sure all items in the trunk or items extending through the opening into the rear seat are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

Driving Position Memory System*

You can store two driver's seat positions (except for power lumbar) with the driving position memory system.
When you unlock and open the driver's door with a keyless remote or keyless access system, the seat automatically adjusts to retracted positions of one of the two preset positions.
The driver's seat moves rearward depending on the set seating position once you:

- Stop the vehicle.
- Put the transmission in P.
- Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- Open the driver's door.

Once the power mode is in the ACCESSORY position, the driver's seat moves forward to the DRIVER 1 or 2 preset position.

System Operation

The system will not operate if:

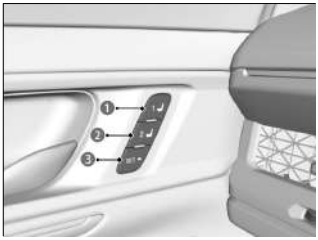
- The transmission is out of the P position.
- Either memory button is pressed while the seat is in motion.
- The seat position is adjusted while in operation.
- Either of the memorized positions is set fully to the rear.

The system may not recognize a key if:

- The key is in close proximity to a cell phone or other wireless device.
- Both keys are in the vehicle at the same time.
- The Driving Position Memory System is disabled in customized features.
- You open the driver's door without fully grabbing the door handle.

*: Not available on all models

Storing a Position in Memory



❶ Memory Button 1
❷ Memory Button 2
❸ SET Button

[1] Set the power mode to ON. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired position.
[2] Press the **SET** button.
» The **SET** button indicator light will come on.
[3] Press the memory button **1** or **2** within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
» The beeper sounds, and the **SET** button indicator light goes off.

- The position of the lumbar support is not stored.

After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be canceled when:

- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat position before the double-beep.
- You set the power mode to any position except ON.

Recalling the Stored Position

❶ Memory Button 1
❷ Memory Button 2

[1] Put the transmission into **P**.
[2] Apply the parking brake.
[3] Press a memory button (**1** or **2**).
» The seat will automatically move to the memorized position.

The seat will stop moving if you:

- Press the **SET** button or a memory button (**1** or **2**).
- Adjust the seat position.
- Put the transmission to a position other than **P**.

Using the audio/information screen, you can disable the automatic seat adjustment function.

Customized Features ►P.202

Multiple separate accounts can be created for each owner of a transmitter.
See the following page for details.

Registering a User ▶P.186

The transmitter settings may not be switched when you change owner accounts.
If this happens, change to a different account and then try switching to the desired account again.
For details, please refer to the following page.

Switching Users ▶P.187

When the door is opened, the driver's seat moves to the seat position of the account that last used the transmitter.

The driver's seat easy exit feature can be turned on/off.

Customized Features ▶P.202

Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you to the possible presence of passengers or items in the rear seats before you exit the vehicle. It activates when the vehicle is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the vehicle was set to ON.

A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder comes on briefly, then the function is deactivated.
- The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.
- The system does not detect passengers in the rear seats. Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seats.

You can turn off the notification setting.

Customized Features ▶P.202

Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The front passenger's and rear seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child seats.

Protecting Child Passengers ▶P.29

In addition, seat belts help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most states and all Canadian provinces and territories require you to wear seat belts.

If a passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then, refasten the belt.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place.
If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat Belt Reminder

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink.
The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.
When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.
The indicator also may not come on and the beeper may not sound when the occupant is not heavy enough to trigger the weight sensor. Such occupants (e.g., infants and smaller children) should be moved to the rear seat as a deploying front airbag likely will injure or kill them.

Protecting Child Passengers ▶P.29

The driver information interface uses colors to aid the driver in checking the status of the passengers.
For the front seating positions:

- Green indicates the seat belt is fastened.
- An unfastened gray graphic indicates the seat belt is not fastened and an occupant has not been detected.
- An unfastened red graphic indicates the seat belt is unfastened and an occupant has been detected.

Front seats

❶ Fastened
❷ Unfastened

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.
If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, a beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the beeper will stop and the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

Rear seats

❶ Fastened
❷ Unfastened

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use.
The rear seat belt reminder notifies you with the driver information interface, the beeper sounds, or both if any of the rear seat belts are not used.
The rear seat belt reminder operates under any of the following circumstances:

- Any of the rear passengers have not fastened their seat belts since the power mode was set to ON.
- Any of the rear seat belts have come off while driving.

The system will not detect a passenger in the rear seats who has not fastened the seat belt.
The driver should check the status of the rear passengers' seat belts at the start of each trip and each time a passenger is seated in the rear seats, using the driver information interface as an aid.
An alert will sound if a passenger in the rear seats unfastens the seat belt while the vehicle is in motion or if motion resumes while the graphic is red.
The system does not monitor harnesses that are part of a child seat, nor the anchors of the LATCH system. While the system can inform you that a seat belt is fastened, it cannot determine whether a child seat is properly installed or used.

Protecting Child Passengers ▶P.29

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats and the outer rear seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

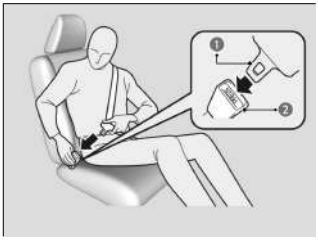
The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal or side collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags or the driver's and passenger's knee airbag.
The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

Adjusting the Seat ▶P.69

[1] Pull the seat belt out slowly.



[2] Insert the latch plate (❶) into the buckle (❷), then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

» Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

[3] Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips (see illustration), then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

[4] If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.
Then, smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten. If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.
About Your Seat Belts ▶P.78

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly.
Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.
Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

Advice for Pregnant Women

Consider alternative:
If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips (see illustration).

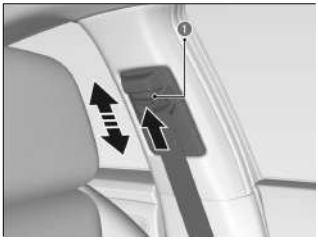
Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



[1] Move the anchor up and down while holding the release button (1).

[2] Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder.

- The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  - » If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.
A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

⚠ WARNING

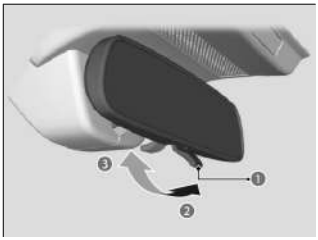
Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.
Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.
Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



Flip the tab to switch the position. The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

❶ **Tab**
❷ **Night Position**
❸ **Daytime Position**

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. Press the ⏻ button to turn this function on and off. When activated, the ⏻ indicator comes on.

» The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in **R**.

❶ ⏻ **Button/Indicator**
❷ **Sensor**

Power Door Mirrors

You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

*: Not available on all models

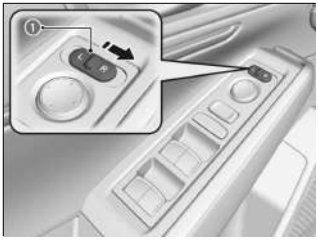
❶ **L/R Selector Switch:**

Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the center position.

❷ **Mirror Position Adjustment Switch:**

Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

Reverse Tilt Door Mirror*



❶ **Selector Switch**

If activated, the passenger side door mirror automatically tilts downward when you put the transmission into **R**: this improves close-in visibility on the passenger side of the vehicle when backing up. The mirror automatically returns to its original position when you take the transmission out of **R**.

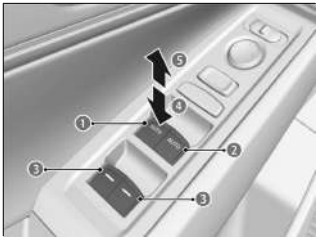
To activate this feature, set the power mode to ON and slide the selector switch to the passenger's side.

*: Not available on all models

Windows

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON using the switches on the doors.
The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.
When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.



1. Driver's Window Switch
2. Front Passenger's Window Switch
3. Rear Passenger's Window Switch
4. Open
5. Close

Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Automatic operation (Front window switch only)

To open: Push the switch down firmly.
To close: Pull the switch up firmly.
The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

- The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
  Opening either front door cancels this function.

Auto Reverse

- If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

If the auto reverse function is activated due to a malfunction or impact caused by the road surface or driving conditions and the window cannot be closed automatically, you can close it by continuously pulling up the switch briefly.

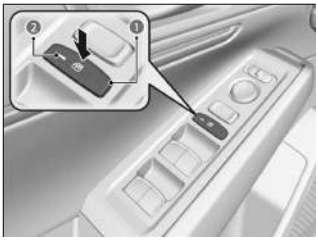
While driving with any of the windows open, you may hear a booming, throbbing, or helicopter-type noise or pressure. This is called wind buffeting. This is a normal occurrence that can be minimized.
If you hear a wind buffeting noise with any of the windows open, lower all of the other windows slightly or open the moonroof.

⚠ WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.
Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

- The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.
- The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

Power Window Lock Button

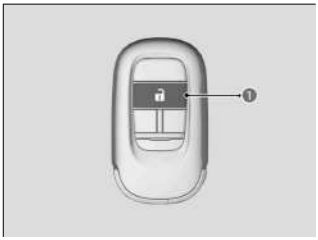


When the power window lock button is set to ON (indicator on), any window other than that on the driver's side will not operate.

❶ **Power Window Lock Button**
❷ **Indicator**

Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening the Windows with the Remote



To open:
Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

❶ Unlock Button

- If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.
- If you open the windows with the remote transmitter, the moonroof will open automatically along with them.

You can turn off or on to open the windows with the keyless remote setting using the audio/information screen.
Customized Features ►P.202

Trunk

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Trunk

Keep the trunk lid closed while driving to:

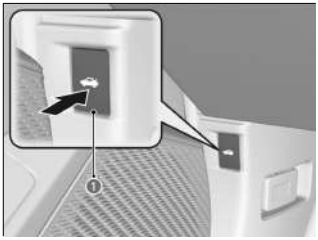
» Avoid possible damage.

» Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.

Exhaust Gas Hazard ►P.26

If the driver's door is locked, the trunk will automatically lock when you close it.

Using the Trunk Opener

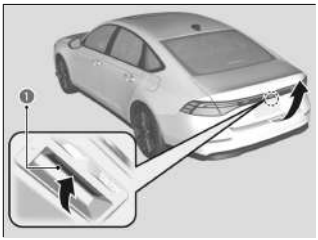


❶ Trunk Opener

Pressing and holding the trunk opener under the driver's side corner of the dashboard unlocks and opens the trunk.

What to Do If Unable to Open the Trunk ►P.382

Using the Trunk Release Button



❶ Trunk Release Button

Push up the release button on the trunk lid after the doors are unlocked.

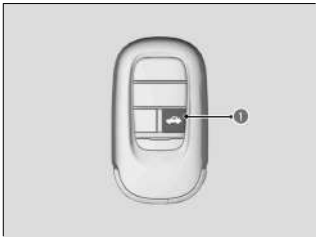
What to Do If Unable to Open the Trunk ►P.382

Even if the trunk is locked, you can open the trunk if you carry the keyless remote.

» Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds once.

- If you forget the keyless remote inside, the beeper will sound and the trunk will not close.
- If the beeper sounds after you close the trunk, move the keyless remote away from the trunk and close again.

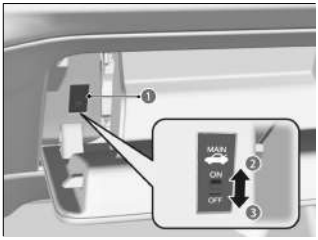
Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the trunk release button for approximately one second to unlock and open the trunk.

❶ Trunk Release Button

Trunk Main Switch



The trunk main switch disables the trunk release button on the remote transmitter, the trunk release button on the trunk lid, and trunk opener under the driver's side corner of the dashboard to protect luggage in the trunk.

[1] Make sure the rear seat-back is not folded down.
[2] Turn off the trunk main switch in the glove box.
[3] Lock the glove box.

❶ Main Switch
❷ ON
❸ OFF

If you need to give the key to someone else, remove the built-in key from the keyless remote by pressing the release button, and give the remote as a valet key.

Emergency Trunk Opener

The trunk release lever allows you to open the trunk from inside for your safety.

Slide the release lever in the direction of the arrow.

❶ Lever

Parents should decide if their children should be shown how to use this feature.

Maximum Load Limit

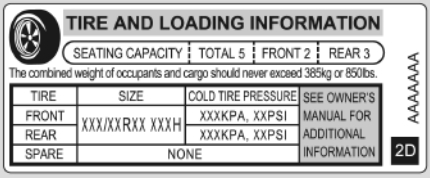
About Maximum Load Limit

The maximum load for your vehicle is 850 lbs (385 kg). See the Tire and Loading Information label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

⚠ WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed. Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Label Example



This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit -

[1] Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

[2] Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

[3] Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

[4] The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1,400 – 750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)

[5] Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.

[6] If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

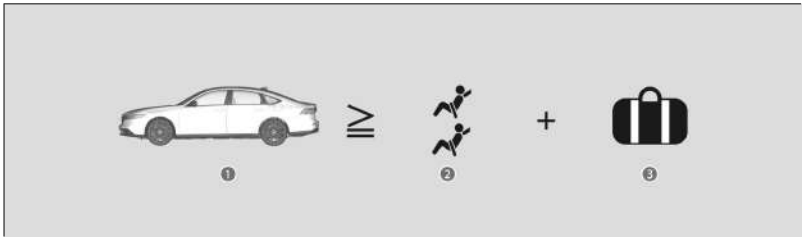
In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories, cargo, and trailer tongue load must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

- Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR): The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all accessories, all cargo, and the tongue load.
- Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR): The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle axle.
- Towing a Trailer: See Towing a Trailer to determine whether your vehicle is designed to tow a trailer.

About Towing a Trailer ▶P.95

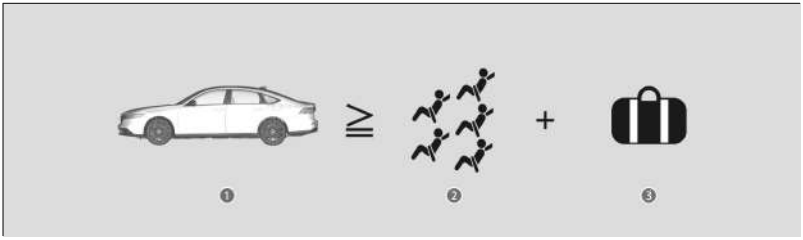
Load Limits Example

Example 1



❶ Max Load: 850 lbs (385 kg)
❷ Passenger Weight: 150 lbs × 2 = 300 lbs (68 kg × 2 = 136 kg)
❸ Cargo Weight: 550 lbs (249 kg)

Example 2



❶ Max Load: 850 lbs (385 kg)
❷ Passenger Weight: 150 lbs × 5 = 750 lbs (68 kg × 5 = 340 kg)
❸ Cargo Weight: 100 lbs (45 kg)

Towing a Trailer

About Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle is not designed to, and cannot safely, tow a trailer nor have a tow hitch installed. Do not install a tow hitch on, or tow with, your vehicle.

Towing Behind a Motorhome

Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motorhome. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, refer to the emergency towing information.

About Towing ▶P.380

Driving Operation

Turn Power System On or Off

POWER Button ····· 97
Turn on Power System ····· 98
Turn off Power System ····· 99
Remote Engine Start ····· 99
What to Do If ····· 101

Shifting

About Shift Operation ····· 102

Braking

Foot Brake ····· 104
Parking Brake ····· 104
Automatic Brake Hold ····· 107
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ····· 110

Starting and Driving

Starting to Drive ····· 111

Parking Your Vehicle

When Stopped ····· 113

Rear View Camera

About Rear View Camera ····· 114

Refueling

Fuel Information ····· 116
How to Refuel ····· 117
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions ····· 118

Turn Signals/Light Switches

Turn Signals ····· 120
Headlights/Parking Lights ····· 120

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wiper/Washer ····· 126
What to Do If ····· 128

Defroster

Defrosting the Windshield and Windows ····· 130
What to Do If ····· 131

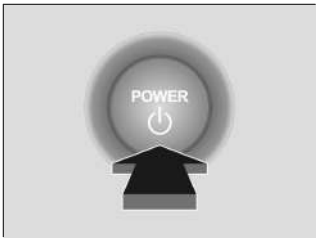
Driving Features

AUTO/**EV**/**CHARGE** Mode ····· 132
Drive Mode System ····· 132
Deceleration Paddle Selector ····· 134
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System ····· 136
Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System ····· 136
Motion Management System ····· 137
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ····· 138

Turn Power System On or Off

POWER Button

Changing the Power Mode



If you carry the keyless remote and press the **POWER** button without depressing the brake pedal, the power mode will change in this order: VEHICLE OFF ➔ ACCESSORY ➔ ON ➔ VEHICLE OFF.

VEHICLE OFF:
Vehicle power is turned OFF.

ACCESSORY:
The audio system and some accessories can be used.

ON:
All accessories can be used.

ON mode:
The **POWER** button is on (in red) if the power system is on.

- Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

If the keyless remote is set in a storage box or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

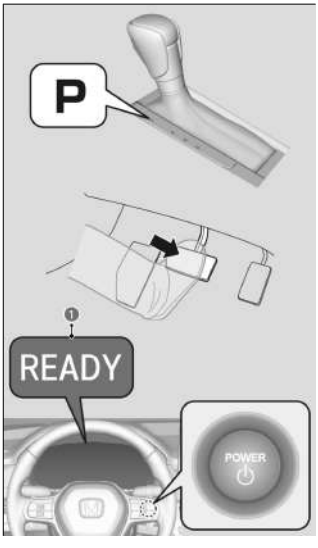
Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in **P** and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the 12-volt battery.

Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

Turn on Power System



[1] Make sure the parking brake is applied.
Parking Brake ▶P.104

[2] Depress the brake pedal, then press the **POWER** button while the transmission is in **P**.

» The **READY** indicator (❶) comes on when the power system is on and you can start driving.

» Keep depressing the brake pedal until the indicator comes on.

» If the outside temperature is extremely low, the indicator does not come on and a warning message appears on the gauge.

- Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the power system.
- The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters).
- When turning on the power system in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear defogger in order to reduce the 12-volt battery drain.
- If you live in a region where winter is extremely cold, an engine block heater will improve starting and warming of the engine. Consult a dealer for details.
- Do not hold the **POWER** button to start the power system. If the power system does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.
- The power system may not activate if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.
- The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the power system does not activate.

Immobilizer System ▶P.55

To prevent unexpected accidents, do not depress the accelerator pedal when turning on the power system.

Turn off Power System

While the vehicle is completely stopped, change the shift position to P, then press the **POWER** button.
After shutting off the engine, you may hear certain noises coming from under vehicle. This noise is caused by the vacuum pump inside the fuel evaporation leakage check module (ELCM). Depending on conditions, the pump will come on for about 15 minutes about 5 to 10 hours after engine shutoff. This noise doesn't indicate a vehicle problem.
The power mode will automatically turn to VEHICLE OFF about 20 minutes after the following conditions have been met:

- A door has been opened, such as when leaving the vehicle.
- The transmission is in P.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.

Remote Engine Start

You can remotely turn on the power system using the keyless remote. Depending on the outside temperature, functions such as the climate control system, rear defogger, and each of the heating features will also be activated.

Defrosting the Windshield and Windows ▶P.130
Using the Front Seat Heaters/Ventilators* ▶P.152
Using the Heated Steering Wheel ▶P.154

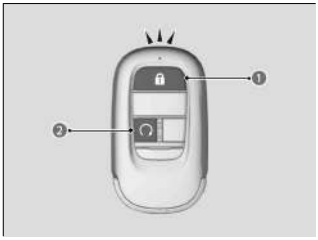
- If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the keyless remote, the range will be reduced. This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

⚠ WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic and can rapidly accumulate in closed or even partly enclosed areas. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.
Never use the remote engine starter with the vehicle parked in a garage or other areas with limited ventilation.

Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.
The remote engine start may violate local laws.

To Turn the Power System On



Press the button (1), then press and hold the button (2).

» Some exterior lights flash once.

» If the power system is turn on successfully, some exterior lights flash six times.

» If the power system does not turn on, exterior lights will not flash. Go within the range, and try again.

The power system is on for up to 10 minutes. To extend the time for another 10 minutes during the first 10 minutes, press the button, then press and hold the button.

» Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

To Turn the Power System Off

Press the button for one second.

» If the power system is turned off successfully, the exterior lights flash once.

» When the keyless remote is out of the keyless access system range, the exterior lights will not flash. The power system will not be turned off. Go within the range, and try again.

Remote Engine Start Limitations

The power system may not be turned on by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled a remote engine start setting.
  Customized Features ►P.202
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF.
- The transmission is in a position other than P.
- The hood is open, or any door or the trunk is unlocked.
- You have already used the remote twice to turn the power system on.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is any antenna failure.
- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The security system alarm is not set.
- The shift lever release button is pressed.
- The 12-volt battery charge is too low.
- The system is updating.

The power system may be turned off while it is running if:

- The security system alarm is activated.

- The door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The hood is open.
- The trunk or any door is unlocked without using the keyless remote or keyless access system.
- You press the shift lever release button.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The Malfunction Indicator Lamp comes on.

What to Do If

If the keyless remote battery is weak

Bring the keyless remote close to the **POWER** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak ▶P.365

When the power system does not start

A pre-registered key is required.

Immobilizer System ▶P.55

If the keyless remote is set on the instrument panel, in a storage box, or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

Why does the brake pedal sink down slightly when the power mode is turned on?

This is related to the activation of the electric brake system, and it is normal.

Why does the exhaust system sound abnormal, or why is there an exhaust gas or gasoline smell in the vehicle?

There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Why is a motor sound coming from under the hood?

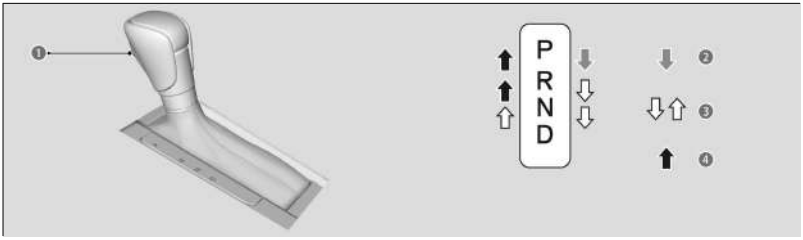
Immediately after starting the power system or while driving, you may hear a motor sound coming from under the hood due to a system check.

The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF. Why?

The shift lever should be moved to **P**.

Shifting

About Shift Operation



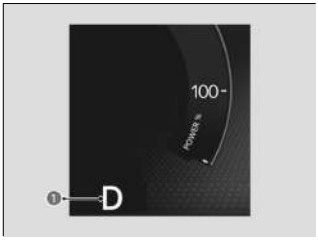
❶ **Shift Lever Release Button**
❷ **Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.**
❸ **Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.**
❹ **Press the shift lever release button and shift.**

P **Park:** Used when parking and before turning off or starting the power system.
R **Reverse:** Used when reversing.
N **Neutral:** Transmission is not locked.
D **Drive:** Used for normal driving.

» The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.

» The deceleration paddle selector can be used while locked when the **M** indicator is on.

Gauge display



❶ **Shift Position Indicator/Transmission System Indicator**

- Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before and after pulling away.
- It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down. Depress the brake pedal first.
- When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-22ºF/-30ºC), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed.

> ! To avoid damage to the transmission, always shift between forward and reverse when the vehicle has come to a complete standstill.

If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Braking

Foot Brake

The foot brake is used to slow down or stop your vehicle, which is operated by a brake pedal.

》 When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear an operating sound from the engine compartment.

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, this is caused by the brake wear indicator rubbing on the brake rotor and indicates that the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If you hear only an occasional squeak or squeal when you initially apply the brake pedal, this may be normal and caused by high frequency vibration of the brake pads against the rotating brake disc.

Do not constantly depress the brake pedal while going downhill, as it builds up heat.

If you constantly depress the brake pedal while going downhill, it will build up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply regenerative braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a speed position.

Brake Assist System

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking. Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

》 When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard.

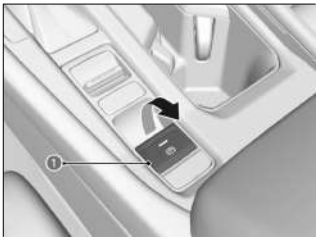
Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parking.

- You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

- The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.
- You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.
  Emergency Power System On ▶P.365
- If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

To Apply Manually

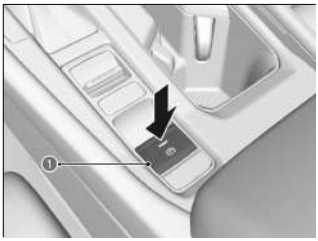


The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has 12-volt battery, no matter which position the power mode is in. Pull the electric parking brake switch (❶) up gently and securely.

» The indicator in the switch comes on.

» The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.

To Release Manually



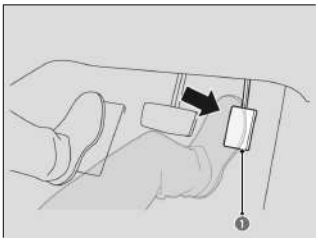
Depress the brake pedal, then press the electric parking brake switch (❶).

» The indicator in the switch goes off.

» The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

- The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.
- Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing downhill on steep hills.

To Release Automatically



Gently depress the accelerator pedal (❶) to start the vehicle.

» The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator
- Parking brake and brake system indicator (amber)
- Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System indicator
- Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

> ! If the driver's seat belt is unfastened, the parking brake will not release automatically.

Automatic Parking Brake Feature

The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

» The default setting for this feature is OFF.

Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode is in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

[1] Change the shift position to P.

[2] Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.

» Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) has come on.

[3] Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within three seconds pull up and hold the switch again.

[4] When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.

» Two beeps indicate that the feature has been activated.

» One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.

» To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle has been stopped for more than 10 minutes by Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow or the automatic brake hold system.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow or the automatic brake hold system.
- When the power mode is turned off while your vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow or the automatic brake hold system.
- When there is a problem with the automatic brake hold system while it is activated.

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied. When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated. Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash, when having your vehicle towed, etc., deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

Temporarily deactivate the automatic parking brake feature

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, follow the procedure explained below.

[1] Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.

[2] Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and then within two seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.

» Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.

» Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both ACC with Low Speed Follow and the automatic brake hold system.

» To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

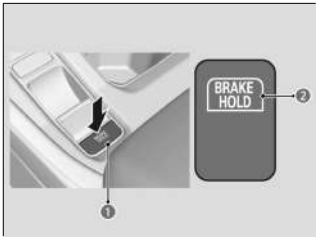
Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

⚠ WARNING

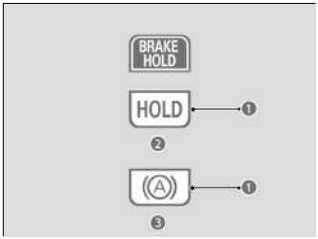
Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.
If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.
Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.
Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.
If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.
Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in **P** and applying the parking brake.
When using the automatic brake hold, keep your foot on the brake pedal until the automatic brake hold indicator comes on. If the vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death. Release your foot from the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

Turning on the System



[1] Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the power system. Press the automatic brake hold button (1).

» The automatic brake hold system indicator (2) comes on, and then the system goes into standby mode.



[2] Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop while the transmission into D.

» The automatic brake hold indicator (❶) comes on, and then the automatic brake hold activates. Take your foot off the brake pedal.

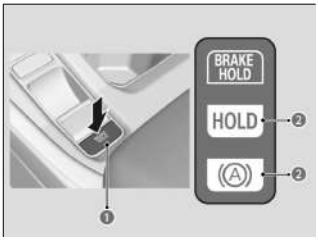
» The automatic brake is held for up to 10 minutes.

❷ U.S. models
❸ Canadian models

The next time the power system is turned on, if the driver's seat belt is fastened, the system will return to standby mode.

> ! Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

System OFF



When you press the automatic brake hold button (❶), the system is turned off.
If the indicator (❷) is lit up, turn off the system while depressing the brake pedal.

If the system is turned off, it will remain off the next time the power system is started.

The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the shift position into P or R.

The system will automatically cancel and the parking brake will be applied when the following conditions are met:

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS helps maintain steering control and vehicle posture by preventing the wheels from locking up during sudden braking or braking on slippery surfaces when driving at speeds above 6 mph (10 km/h).

» The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

» You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

- The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down.
- The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: it is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

The ABS may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire, and the air pressures as specified.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking will not be affected, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Starting and Driving

Starting to Drive

[1] Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, select the shift position.

» If you turned off the power system with the remote engine start feature, depress the brake pedal and press the **POWER** button before changing the shift position.

[2] Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

» The parking brake will release automatically. You can also release it by operating the parking brake switch.

Parking Brake ►P.104

When the power system was turned on with the remote engine start feature, the power system stops when the shift position is taken out of **P** before the **POWER** button is pressed.

» To start driving, restart the power system and follow step 1.

Turn on Power System ►P.98

Do not select **N** while driving as you will lose regenerative braking (and acceleration) performance.

As a hybrid vehicle, the sounds and vibrations from the engine may be absent even though the vehicle is ready for driving. It also makes you fail to recognize that you can start.
Check the vehicle status with the **READY** indicator.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

During the first 600 miles (1,000 km) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km) after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors to allow for proper break-in.

Hill Start Assist System

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

» Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Creeping

This vehicle creeps when the shift position is in D or R.

» Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped or ensure that brake-hold is engaged.

Automatic Brake Hold ▶P.107

Parking Your Vehicle

When Stopped

[1] Depress the brake pedal firmly and come to a complete stop.
[2] With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
[3] Change the shift position to **P**.

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged. A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.
Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.

Always set the parking brake, especially if you are parked on an incline.

The following may damage the driveline or cause the power system to overheat and fail:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Changing to **P** before the vehicle stops completely.
- Holding the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal when facing uphill.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

In extremely cold temperatures, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving.
If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Rear View Camera

About Rear View Camera

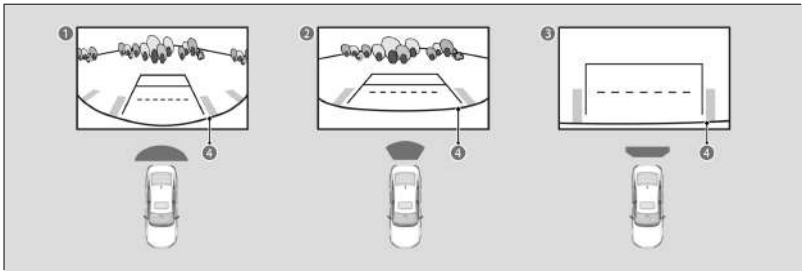
When the shift position is changed to R, the vehicle's rear view is automatically displayed on the screen.

- If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.
- The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

> ! If the vehicle's rear view is not displayed on the screen while the shift position is in R, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Switching Camera Modes

You can view three different camera modes on the screen. Select the appropriate icon to switch the mode.

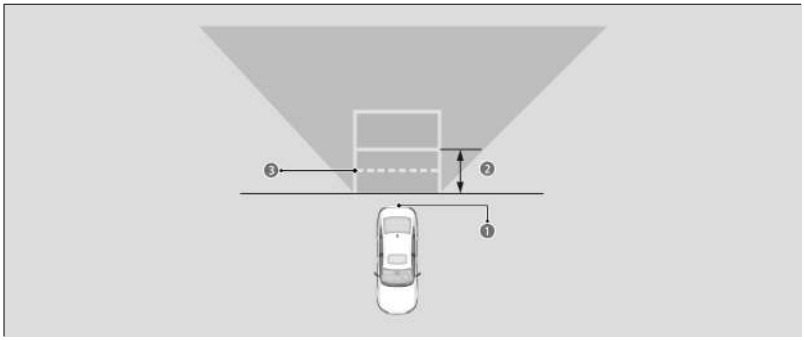


❶ **Wide view mode**
❷ **Normal view mode**
❸ **Top down view mode**
❹ **Bumper**

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be displayed the next time you change the shift position to R.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the power mode, Wide view mode will be displayed the next time you turn on the power mode and change the shift position to R.

- If you were using Top down view mode and about 10 seconds elapsed after you changed the shift position out of R, Wide view mode will be displayed the next time you change the shift position to R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and change the shift position back to R within about 10 seconds after you changed it out of R, Top down view mode will be displayed.

Distance between the vehicle and guideline



❶ Camera
❷ Approx. 39 inches (1m)
❸ Approx. 20 inches (50 cm)

Both the **Fixed Guideline** (which indicates distance between your vehicle and the rear surroundings) and **Dynamic Guideline** (which moves based on steering operation) can be turned on and off.

Customized Features ▶P.202

The guidelines should be used as a reference only.

The positions/distances indicated by the guidelines and camera views on the display may differ from the actual positions/distances due to the changes in the vehicle height, road conditions, and other factors.

Refueling

Fuel Information

Fuel Recommendation

Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number 87 or higher

Use of a lower octane gasoline can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

» Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 15% ethanol by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol. If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

> We recommend quality gasoline containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits. In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend the use of gasoline that does NOT contain harmful manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT, if such gasoline is available.
>
> Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact a dealer for service.

Top Tier Detergent Gasoline

Because the level of detergency and additives in gasoline vary in the market, Honda endorses the use of “TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline” where available to help maintain the performance and reliability of your vehicle. TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline meets a new gasoline standard jointly established by leading automotive manufacturers to meet the needs of today’s advanced engines.

Qualifying gasoline retailers will, in most cases, identify their gasoline as having met “TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline” standards at the retail location. This fuel is guaranteed to contain the proper level of detergent additives and be free of metallic additives. The proper level of detergent additives, and absence of harmful metallic additives in gasoline, help avoid buildup of deposits in your engine and emission control system.

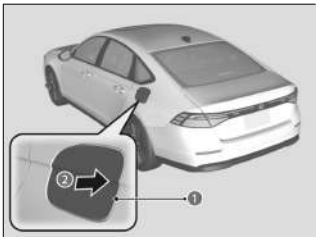
For further important fuel-related information for your vehicle, or on information on gasoline that does not contain MMT, visit *www.hondacars.com.* In Canada, visit *www.honda.ca* (English), *www.honda.ca/fr* (French) for additional information on gasoline. For more information on top tier gasoline, visit *www.toptiergas.com.*

Fuel Tank Capacity

12.81 US gal (48.5L)

How to Refuel

Your fuel tank is not equipped with a fuel filler cap. You can insert the filler nozzle directly into the filler neck. The tank seals itself again when you pull out the filler nozzle.



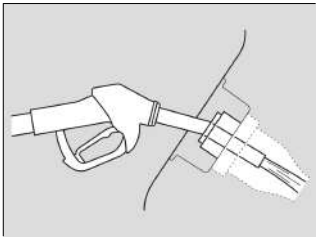
[1] Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.

[2] Set the power mode to OFF and then unlock the driver's door.

» The fuel fill door (1) will unlock.

[3] Press and release the area indicated by the arrow (2). You will hear a click and the lid will open slightly.

[4] Manually pull the fuel fill door to a fully open position.



[5] Place the end of the filler nozzle on the lower part of filler opening, then insert it slowly and fully.

» Make sure that the end of the filler nozzle goes down along with the filler pipe.

» Keep the filler nozzle level.

» When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically.

» If you do not fill up the tank to full, always add a minimum of **1.3 US gal** (**5 L**) of fuel.

» After filling, wait about five seconds before removing the filler nozzle.

[6] Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

- The fuel filler opening is designed to accept only service station filler nozzles for refueling. Use of smaller diameter tubes (e.g., those used to siphon fuel for other uses) or other non-service station devices can damage the area in and around the filler opening.
- The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature. Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity and cause fuel to spill.
- If you repeatedly fill the tank with less than the specified minimum amount of fuel, the malfunction indicator lamp may come on. If this happens, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

- Use the lock tab or the master door lock switch to unlock the fuel fill door. The vehicle doors and fuel fill door automatically relock if the remote unlock function is used. This can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver's door.
- Using the Walk Away Auto Lock® feature will also lock the fuel fill door. Always make sure both the driver's door and fuel fill door are unlocked before attempting to open the fuel fill door.

Locking the Doors and Trunk (Walk Away Auto Lock®) ►P.61

- If the filler nozzle keeps turning off when the tank is not full, there may be a problem with the pump's fuel vapor recovery system. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult a dealer.
- If you have to refuel your vehicle from a portable container, use the funnel provided with your vehicle.

Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container ►P.383

⚠ WARNING

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive.

You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flames away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO_2 emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

Miles driven ÷ Gallons of fuel = Miles per Gallon

100 × Liters of fuel ÷ Kilometers driven = L per 100 km

In Canada, posted fuel economy numbers are established following a simulated test. For more information on how this test is performed, please visit *https://www.nrcan.gc.ca* and search for "fuel consumption testing" in the search field at the top of the page.

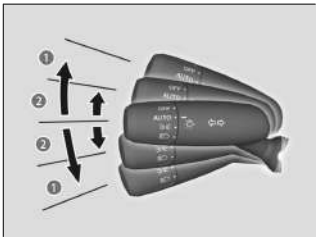
Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Always maintain your vehicle in accordance with the messages displayed on the driver information interface.

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.
  Recommended Engine Oil ▶P.322
- Maintain the specified tire pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess cargo.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Turn Signals/Light Switches

Turn Signals



Turn signal (1)

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

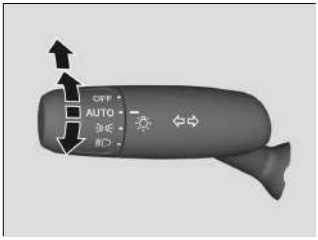
» The turn signal indicator will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

One-touch turn signal (2)

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink three times.

» If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

Headlights/Parking Lights



The lights will turn on automatically depending on the ambient brightness.
They can also be switched on and off manually.

» The lights on indicator in the instrument panel will turn on.

The exterior lights will switch on automatically when the light switch is set to **AUTO** while the power mode is in ON.

Manual operation

Headlights/parking lights:
Turn the light switch to .
Parking lights:
Turn the light switch to .
Headlight/parking lights off:
Turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it while the transmission is in **P** and the parking brake is applied.
The lights will come back on automatically when:

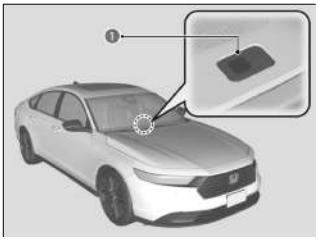
» The light switch is turned to **OFF** again and released.

» The transmission is changed out of **P** and the parking brake is released.

When the parking lights are on, the side marker, tail, and rear license plate lights will also switch on.

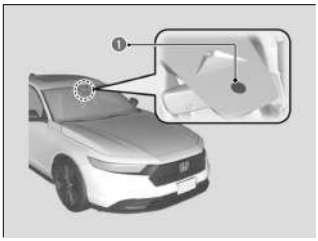
The light sensor is in the location shown below.
Do not cover the light sensor.

▼ Models without automatic intermittent wipers



❶ Light Sensor

▼ Models with automatic intermittent wipers



❶ Light Sensor

▼ U.S. models

You can change the auto light sensitivity setting.
Customized Features ▶P.202

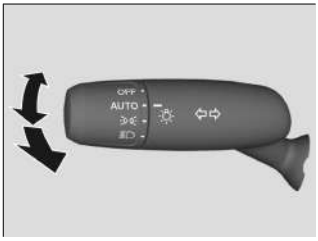
▼ All models

When the light switch is turned to ≡DC or ≡D and the power is turned to OFF, a beeper sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the light switch is turned to **AUTO** and the ambient light levels are low, the headlights and parking lights will switch on if you unlock a door. They will switch off when the door is locked.

If you suspect that the headlights are not positioned properly, have the vehicle inspected by a dealer.

High Beams



When the headlights are on, push the lever forward.
Pull the lever back to return to low beams.
The high beam indicator in the instrument panel will turn on when the high beams are on.

- Flashing the high beams: Pull the lever back, and release it.

Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.
This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.
The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.
At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.
Customized Features ▶P.202

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the keyless remote with you, and close the driver's door.
If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).
The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door.
If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off.

If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.
Customized Features ▶P.202

Daytime Running Lights

The parking/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is in **AUTO** or .
- The parking brake is released.

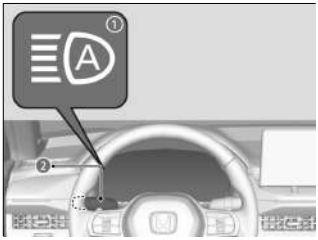
The lights remain on even if you set the parking brake.
Setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF will turn off the daytime running lights.
The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the headlight switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside.

Auto High-Beam

The front sensor camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

How to use the auto high-beam

Activating the system
When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and automatically switches between the high beam and low beam, depending on the situation.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

❶ Auto High-Beam Indicator
❷ Light Switch

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever toward you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam if necessary.
The range and the distance at which the camera can recognize light sources varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.
Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windshield, refer to the following.

Front Sensor Camera ▶P.233

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windshield around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windshield, be careful not to apply the windshield cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker, or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

How to turn off the Auto High-Beam System: You can turn the auto high-beam system on and off.

Customized Features ▶P.202

If you find the timing of beam changes inconvenient for driving, change the headlight beams manually.
If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the airflow directed toward the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Clean front windshield or poor viewing condition.** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windshield is clean. Clean the windshield if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after the vehicle has been driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When the auto high-beam indicator comes on, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

High beam

All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 25 mph (40 km/h) or more.
- There are no preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are few street lights on the road ahead.

Low beam

One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on.

- Your vehicle speed is 15 mph (24 km/h) or less.
- There is a preceding or oncoming vehicle with headlights or taillights turned on.
- There are many street lights on the road ahead.

Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever toward you for flashing the high beams and then release it.

» To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever toward you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to .

» To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. If the automatic switching operation does not fit your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

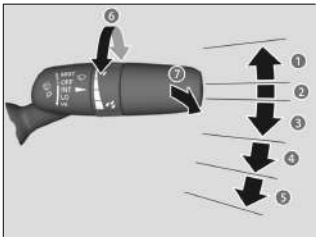
- The brightness of the lights from a preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windshield frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources like street lights, electric billboards, and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light toward the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam on when:

- Windshield wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wiper/Washer



Models with manual intermittent operation

❶ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

❷ OFF
❸ INT

Low speed with intermittent

❹ LO

Low speed wipe

❺ HI

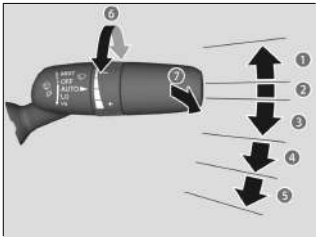
High speed wipe

❻ Intermittent Time Adjustment Ring

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.
: Lower speed, fewer sweeps
: Higher speed, more sweeps

❼ Pull to use washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you.
When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windshield, and then stop.



▼ Models with automatic intermittent operation

❶ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

❷ OFF
❸ AUTO
❹ LO

Low speed wipe

❺ HI

High speed wipe

❻ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

You can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor.
[−] : Low sensitivity
[+] : High sensitivity

❼ Pull to use washer

Sprays while you pull the lever toward you.
When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windshield, and then stop.

▼ Models with manual intermittent operation

- If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.
- When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting and the **LO** setting become the same.

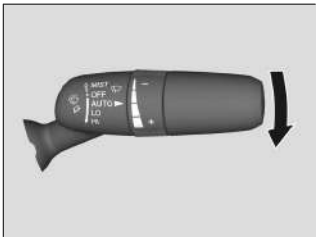
▼ All models

When lifting the front wiper arms, move them into the maintenance position before lifting them.
Lifting the Wiper Arms ►P.331

Do not use the wipers when the windshield is dry. The windshield will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

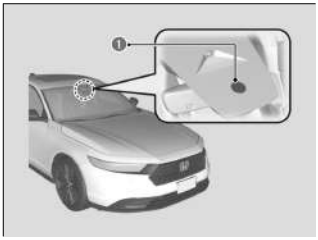
> ! Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windshield wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.
The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stop in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

» If the sensor reacts to something other than rain and the wipers operate unnecessarily, you can stop them by moving the lever to the **OFF** position.



The rainfall sensor is located at the top of the middle of the front windshield.

1 Rainfall Sensor

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windshield
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

What to Do If

When the wipers are not moving

The wiper motor may stop temporarily to prevent an overload.
Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes.

*: Not available on all models

When the wiper blades are stuck to the windshield glass due to freezing in cold weather

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windshield.
Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the defogger to warm the windshield, then turn the wipers on.

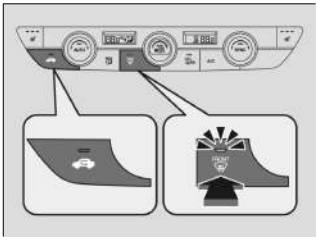
When snow has accumulated on the wipers

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the buildup of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.
Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

Defroster

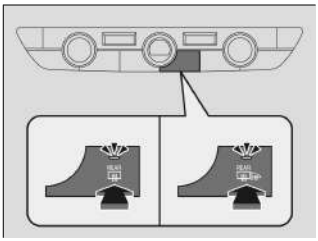
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows

When defogging the front or side windows



Pressing the button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.
Press the button again to turn off, and the system returns to the previous settings.

Rear defogger/heated door mirror* button



Press the rear defogger and heated door mirror* button to defog the rear window and mirrors* when the power mode is in ON.

- The rear defogger and heated door mirror* automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes, depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 32°F （0°C） or below, it does not automatically switch off.

▼ Models with heated door mirror

- When the power mode is set to ON and the outside temperature is below 41°F (5°C), the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

▼ All models

> ! For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

*: Not available on all models

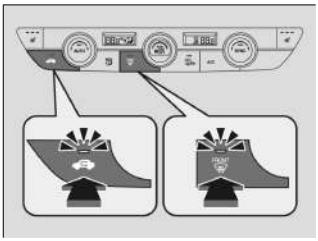
After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode.
If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Do not set the temperature near the lower limit.
When cold air hits the windshield, the outside of the windshield may fog up.

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been defogged.
This may weaken the 12–volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

What to Do If

To rapidly defrost the windows



[1] Press the button.
[2] Press the button (indicator on).

When the side window gets fogged up

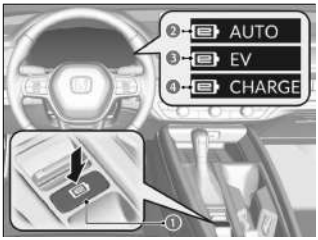
Adjust the nearest climate control vent so that it blows directly on the side window.

Driving Features

AUTO/EV/CHARGE Mode

You can press the **e**-button (❶) to select **EV** mode. Press and hold the **e**-button to select **CHARGE** mode. Press and hold again to select **AUTO** mode.

》 Depending on vehicle or driving conditions, you may not be able to change out of **AUTO** mode, or **AUTO** mode may be selected automatically.



❷ **AUTO** Mode Indicator
❸ **EV** Mode Indicator
❹ **CHARGE** Mode Indicator

AUTO Mode

When driving, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the electric motor, exclusively by the gasoline engine, or by a combination of the two. The system selects which propulsion source is most appropriate and automatically switches to it.

EV Mode

When **EV** mode is activated, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the electric motor.

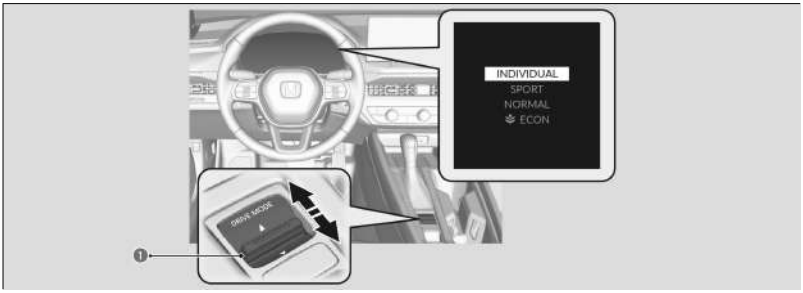
CHARGE Mode

When **CHARGE** mode is activated, the engine starts and the High Voltage battery begins charging.

Drive Mode System

Selecting the Drive Mode

Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch (❶) to select a mode. The mode you select appears on the driver information interface.



The mode may not be able to be changed under some driving conditions. If there is a vehicle system failure, a message will also appear on the driver information interface, and you cannot change the mode.

INDIVIDUAL Mode

Customize each category to suit the driver's preference.

Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings ▶P.134

SPORT Mode

Enhances responsiveness to the driver's input.

NORMAL Mode

Optimizes the balance between operability and comfort.

ECON Mode

Facilitates fuel-efficient driving.

» While in **ECON** mode, the climate control system will be less effective and the vehicle slower to accelerate.

Next Start-Up Mode

The mode for the next start-up is saved according to the following chart.

▼ Models with driving position memory system

Each keyless remote has its own mode saved.

Last Mode	Next Mode
Any mode other than **ECON**	**NORMAL**
ECON	**ECON**

Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings

[1] Select **INDIVIDUAL** mode.
[2] Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch up and hold or select **Customize** to open the **INDIVIDUAL Settings**.
» You can also select from customized features on the audio/information screen.
Customized Features ▶P.202
[3] Select the setting category.
[4] Select the desired setting.

When you select **Reset to Default** on the **INDIVIDUAL Settings** screen, all **INDIVIDUAL** settings are reset to their factory defaults.

Deceleration Paddle Selector

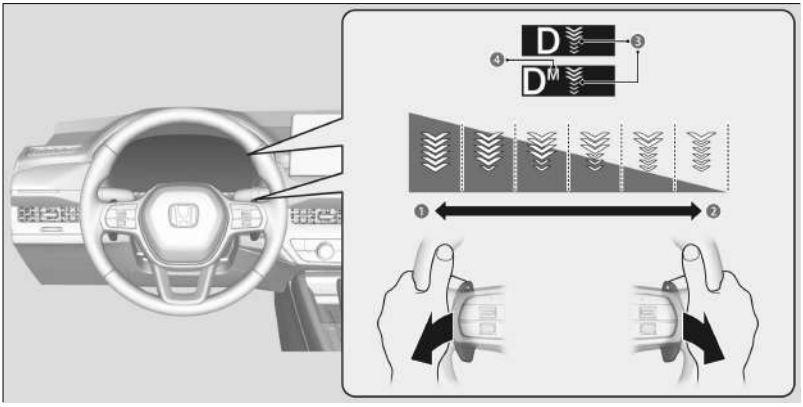
You can use the paddles on the steering wheel to change the rate of deceleration (between six stages) when you release the accelerator pedal.
When descending a hill, you can use the deceleration paddle selector to help maintain the rate of deceleration, thereby allowing you to keep a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

⚠ CAUTION

Increasing the deceleration rate by quickly shifting the deceleration paddle selector can cause the tires to skid, resulting in a crash that could injure or kill someone. Always maintain a reasonable rate of deceleration.

How to Operate the Deceleration Paddle Selector

Each paddle operation changes the deceleration level by 1.
» The deceleration rate only changes by one stage even if you keep the paddle pulled back.
» If you pull back the right and left paddle selector at the same time, the deceleration stage may not change.



❶ **Pull back on the [–] paddle (left side)**

》 Rate of deceleration increases.

❷ **Pull back on the [+] paddle (right side)**

》 Rate of deceleration decreases.

❸ **Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator: Shows the rate of deceleration.**
❹ **M Indicator: Appears when the rate of deceleration is fixed.**

Using the deceleration paddle selector

The deceleration rate display comes on when you pull back on the paddle while the shift position is in [**D**].
When you decelerate to a near stop or press down on the accelerator, the deceleration rate selector is automatically canceled, and the deceleration rate display goes off.

Using the paddle selector with a fixed rate of deceleration

If you keep the [–] paddle pulled back or switch to **SPORT** mode while the shift position is in [**D**], the **M** display and deceleration rate display appear, and you can use the deceleration rate selector with a fixed setting.
To unlock the fixed deceleration paddle selector, pull and hold back the [+] paddle or turn off the **SPORT** mode.

Deceleration Paddle Selector Limitations

In the following situations, the stage may not change and the stage icon will blink even if you pull back the selector. The deceleration stage may decrease or cancel automatically when:

- Hybrid system protection is needed.
- The brake pad temperature is too hot.

- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

This system makes a sound to alert people that your vehicle is nearby when you are driving at a speed of about 22 mph (36 km/h) or less.

Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

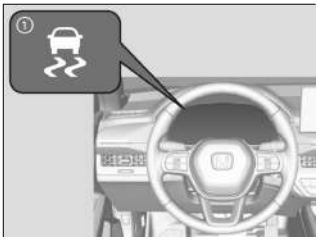
VSA® helps stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating propulsion output and selectively applying the brakes.

» The main function of the VSA® system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

> **!** VSA® cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

> **!** The VSA® may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire and the air pressures as specified.

VSA® Operation



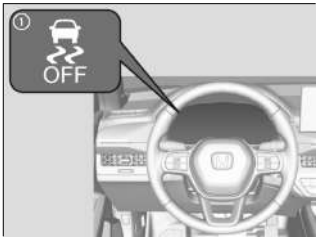
When VSA® activates, the VSA® system indicator (1) will also blink.

» The engine and motor do not respond to the accelerator.

» You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system.

When the VSA® system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA® On and Off



You can partially disable VSA® features using the driver information interface.
The traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed.

Switching the Display ▶P.297
Vehicle Stability Assist Mode ▶P.304

❶ **VSA OFF Indicator**

Even if the system is turned off, it will automatically turn on every time the power mode is turned on.

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA® temporarily switched off. Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA® on again.

Motion Management System

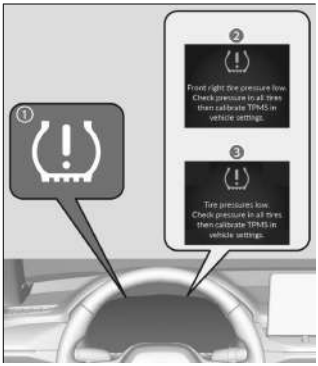
Lightly decelerates, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

- When the brake system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the motion management system may not activate.
- You may hear an operating noise while the motion management system is activated.
- The brake lights may come on while the motion management system is activated.

The motion management system cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

▼U.S. models

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)



Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tire, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tire while you are driving to determine if one or more tires are significantly under-inflated.
This will cause the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator (❶) to come on and a message to appear.

❷ Appears when any one tire is significantly under-inflated. (e.g., a front right side tire)
❸ Appears when two or more tires are significantly under-inflated.

- The system does not monitor the tires when driving at low speed.
- Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tire pressure and can trigger the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.
- Tires can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Tires can become overinflated in warmer weather.
- The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator will not come on as a result of overinflation.

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- The tire loses air pressure rapidly.
- Tire chains* are used.

The low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tires than the condition at calibration.
- Tire chains* are used.

System Calibration

You must start calibration every time you adjust the pressure in one or more tires, rotate the tires, or replace one or more tires.

*: Not available on all models

When you calibrate the system, do the following:

Audio System Basic Operation with 12.3" Color Touchscreen ►P.162

[1] Select **Home**.
[2] Select **Vehicle Settings**.
[3] Select **TPMS Calibration**.
[4] Select **Calibrate**.
  » Calibration starts.
  » If the **Calibration Failed to Start** message appears, repeat the procedure.
  » The calibration process finishes automatically.

- Make sure the vehicle is at a complete stop and the shift position is in P when you calibrate the system.
- Set the cold tire pressure in all four tires before calibrating the system.
  Checking Tires ►P.333
- If the tire chains* are installed, remove them before calibrating.
- The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 30-60 mph (48-97 km/h). During this period, if the ignition is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within a certain amount of time, you may notice the low tire pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

> The system may not function properly if tire type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tire as specified.

> If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tires are installed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) - Required Federal Explanation

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

*: Not available on all models

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Controls

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches 143
Map Light Switches 143

Interior Convenience Items

Glove Box 145
Center Console Box 145
Accessory Power Socket 145
Wireless Charger 146
Coat Hook 149
Sunglasses Holder 149
Beverage Holders 150
Cargo Hooks 151
Under-Floor Storage Area 151

Seat Heaters/Ventilators*

Using the Front Seat Heaters/Ventilators* 152
Using the Rear Seat Heaters* 153

Heated Steering Wheel*

Using the Heated Steering Wheel 154

Moonroof

Opening/Closing the Moonroof 155
What to Do If 156

Climate Control System

Automatic Climate Control System 157
Using Automatic Climate Control 158

In-Vehicle Infotainment

About Your In-Vehicle Infotainment 161
Audio System Basic Operation 162
USB Ports 164
Audio Remote Controls 165
Connecting a Device 166
About System Updates 168

12.3" Color Touchscreen Basic Operations

Start Up 169
Reboot Audio 170
Home Screen 170
System Updates 171
Trip Computer 173
Clock 173
Adjusting the Sound 175
Changing the Display Settings 176
Alexa Built-In 176
Playing AM/FM Radio 178
About Audio Playback 180
Google built-in* 184
User Information 185
Power Flow 187

12.3" Color Touchscreen Other Operations

HondaLink® 190
HondaLink® Service 191
Wi-Fi Connection 191
AT&T Hotspot 192
Apple CarPlay 193
Android Auto™ 195
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® 197

12.3" Color Touchscreen Customized Features

Customized Features 202

General Information on the Audio System

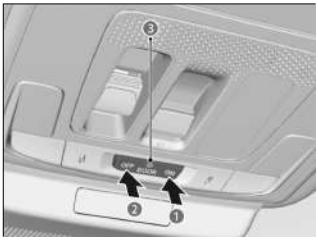
Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives 212
Honda App License Agreement 213
About Open Source Licenses 225
License Information 225
Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto 227

*: Not available on all models

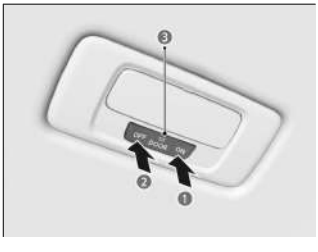
Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches

Front



Rear



❶ : ON
The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

❷ : OFF
The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

❸ : Door activated
The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened
- When the driver's door is unlocked
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF

- In the door activated position, the interior lights turn off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed. When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it, the lights turn off after about 30 seconds.
- If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior lights turn off after about 15 minutes.

You can change the interior light's dimming time.
Customized Features ▶P.202

To avoid draining the 12-volt battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the power system is off.

Map Light Switches

This light is used for situations such as viewing a map at night while your vehicle is stopped.
Press the switch to turn on the light; press it again to turn off the light.

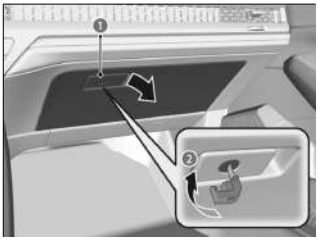
Front seat

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the buttons.

When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map lights will not turn off when you press the buttons.

Interior Convenience Items

Glove Box



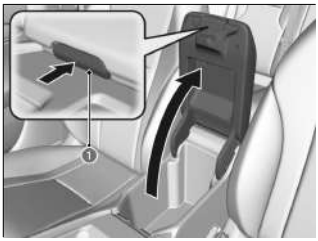
Pull the handle to open the glove box. You can lock the glove box with the built-in key.

❶ Handle
❷ To Lock

⚠ WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.
Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

Center Console Box



Push in the lock knob to open the center console box.

❶ Knob

Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON. Open the console lid and the cover to use it.
The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

Center console box

Do not insert an automotive–type cigarette lighter element.
This can overheat the accessory power socket.

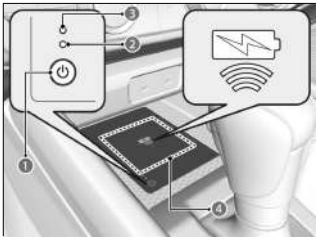
To prevent 12-volt battery drain, only use the accessory power socket with the power system on.

When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

Wireless Charger

About Wireless Charger

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.
Charge any devices compatible with Qi wireless charging on the area indicated by the mark as follows:



❶ ⏻ (Power) Button
❷ Green Indicator
❸ Amber Indicator
❹ Charging Area

[1] To turn the system on and off, press and hold the ⏻ (power) button.
» When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.

[2] Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
» The system will automatically start charging the device, and the amber indicator light will come on.
» Make sure that the device is compatible with the system, and placed with the chargeable side in the center of the charging area.

[3] When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
» Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

⚠ CAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.

- Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.
- Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.
- Do not spill liquids (e.g., water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.
- Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine, or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.
- Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging.
- Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long period of time when the power system is off. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charge area while charging. The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also, precision machines such as watches can be affected.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.

RF Radiation Exposure Statement:

▼ U.S. models

This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.
This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

▼ Canadian models

This equipment complies with ISED RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.
This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

▼ All models

The wireless charger can support up to 15 W, but the charging rate varies based on the device and other conditions.
appears on the audio/information screen when the device is being charged by the wireless charger.
During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and the device to heat up.
“Qi” and marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).
Charging may be briefly interrupted when:

- All doors or the trunk are closed to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:

- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as a TV station, electric power plant, or gas station.
- The device has a cover, case, or accessories which are not compatible with wireless charging.
- A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Indicator is blinking

Perform one of the following solutions:

When the Indicators (Green & Amber) Blink Simultaneously

» Remove the obstacle(s).

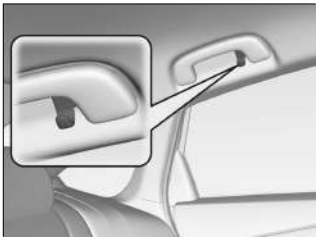
» Pick up and reset the device to the center of the charging area where is located.

» Temporarily suspend charging the device. Wait for the temperature to drop and attempt to charge the device again.

When Indicator (Amber) is Blinking

» Contact a dealer for repairs.

Coat Hook



There is a coat hook on the rear left grab handle.

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

Sunglasses Holder

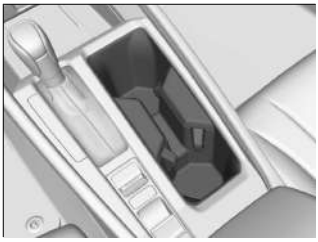
To open the sunglasses holder, press and release the indent.
To close, press it again until it latches.
You can store sunglasses and other small items in this holder.

Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

Beverage Holders

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

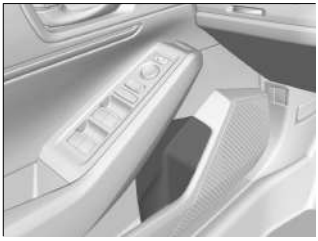
Front seat beverage holders



Located in the console between the front seats.

Door side beverage holders

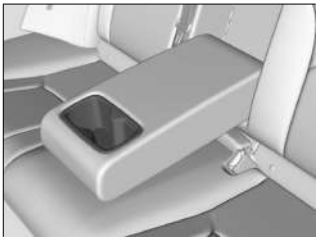
Front



Located on both of the front and rear door side pockets.

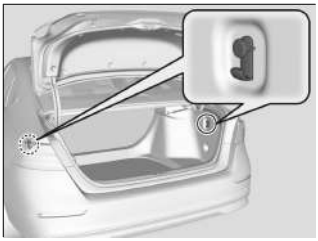
Rear

Rear seat beverage holders



Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

Cargo Hooks



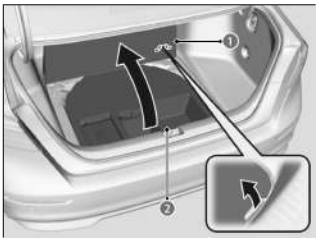
The cargo hooks in the trunk can be used to install a net for securing items.

> ! Heavy objects may damage the hook. Make sure any items put on this hook weigh less than 6.6 lbs (3 kg).

- Distribute cargo evenly on the floor of the trunk, placing the heaviest items on the bottom and as far forward as possible.

About Maximum Load Limit ▶P.92

Under-Floor Storage Area



Pull up the trunk floor lid.

❶ **Floor Lid**
❷ **Under-Floor Storage Area**

Seat Heaters/Ventilators*

Using the Front Seat Heaters/Ventilators*

The seat heaters or ventilators* can be used when the power mode is in ON.

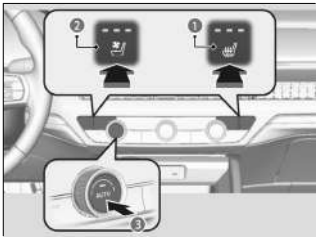
The seat heaters:

Use them to warm up the seat.

The seat ventilators:

Use them when you want to ventilate the surface of the seats.

When used with the air conditioning, the surface of the seats will become easier to cool.



Press the seat heater or the seat ventilator button:

Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)

Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)

Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)

Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

❶ **Seat Heater Button**

❷ **Seat Ventilator Button***

❸ **AUTO Button**

- When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previous setting is maintained.
- After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the front seat heaters will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the front seat heaters shut off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

Press the AUTO button:

- Both the air conditioner and seat temperature will automatically change to the setting most suitable to the ambient environment.
  - 》 When the seat heater or the seat ventilator* button is pressed, settings will switch to manual mode.
- As time passes, the set temperature will fall, and eventually the seat heater will shut off.
- The seat heater and seat ventilation may turn on if sensors detect weight on the passenger seat due to cargo, etc.

To prevent automatic activation, you can turn off automatic climate control for the front seat.

Customized Features ►P.202

*: Not available on all models

⚠ WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.
Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making the power system difficult to start.

Using the Rear Seat Heaters*

The seat heaters can be used when the power mode is in ON.

Press the seat heater button:
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

❶ Rear Seat Heater Button

- There is no heater in the rear center seating position.
- After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the rear seat heaters will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the rear seat heaters shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

⚠ WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.
Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

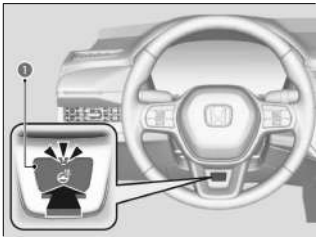
Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making the power system difficult to start.

*: Not available on all models

Heated Steering Wheel*

Using the Heated Steering Wheel

The heated steering wheel can be used when the power mode is in ON.
When a comfortable temperature is reached, press the button again to turn it off.



Press the button on the lower side of the steering wheel.

❶ Heated Steering Wheel Button

- The heated steering wheel is turned off every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

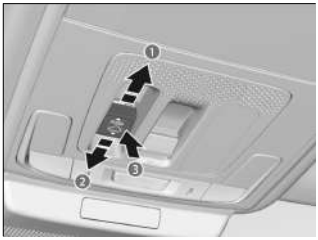
> ❗ Do not use the heated steering wheel continuously when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making the power system difficult to start.

*: Not available on all models

Moonroof

Opening/Closing the Moonroof

You can operate the moonroof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the moonroof.



❶ Open
❷ Close
❸ Tilt

Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly.

The moonroof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the moonroof midway, pull or push the switch briefly.

Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Tilting the moonroof up

To tilt: Push on the center of the moonroof switch.
To close: Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.
Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.

Opening the moonroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the moonroof panel or motor.

- The moonroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to OFF. Opening either front door cancels this function.

- When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the moonroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the moonroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.
  Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the moonroof.
- When you tilt open the moonroof, if the air conditioner is set to **AUTO** it will automatically switch to fresh air mode to reduce wind noise. When you close the moonroof, depending on the situation, it will change to recirculation or fresh air mode.

You can use the remote transmitter to operate the moonroof.

Opening the Windows with the Remote ►P.89

What to Do If

When the moonroof does not close

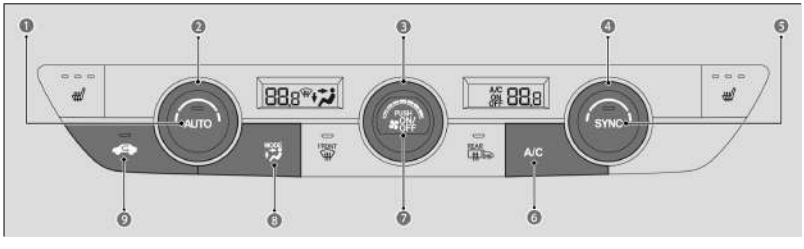
The moonroof may get stuck if the auto reverse function activates in response to an object preventing it from closing.
If this happens, lightly press and hold the switch in the closing direction for about 15 seconds to release the auto reverse function.
Continue holding the switch until the moonroof closes completely.
After taking these steps, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Climate Control System

Automatic Climate Control System

About Automatic Climate Control System

Explanations of Switches



❶ AUTO Button

Switches to automatic control.

❷ Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial

Adjusts the driver's side interior temperature.

❸ Fan Control Dial

Adjusts the fan speed.

❹ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial

Adjusts the passenger's side interior temperature.

❺ SYNC (Synchronization) Button

Synchronizes the temperature for the driver's side and the passenger's side.

❻ A/C (Air Conditioning) Button

Toggles of cooling/dehumidification function.

❼ ON/OFF (ON/OFF) Button

Activates or deactivates the climate control system.

❽ MODE Control Button

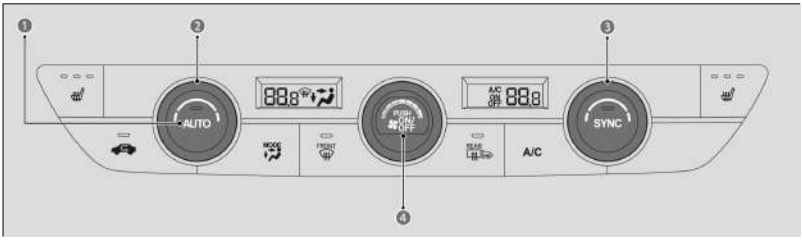
- Dashboard vents and back of the center console
- Floor vents
- Dashboard and floor vents, and back of the center console
- Floor and defroster vents

❾ (Recirculation) Button

Switches between Recirculation mode/Fresh air mode.

- Recirculation (indicator light on):
  Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.
- Fresh air (indicator light off):
  Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

Using Automatic Climate Control



❶ AUTO Button
❷ Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
❸ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
❹ (ON/OFF) Button

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.
Use the system when the power system is on.

[1] Press the **AUTO** button.
[2] Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side temperature control dial.
[3] Press the (ON/OFF) button to cancel.

- If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.
  The auto button indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.
- While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.
- To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.
- For directions on the proper handling of the front seat heaters and seat ventilation, refer to the following page.

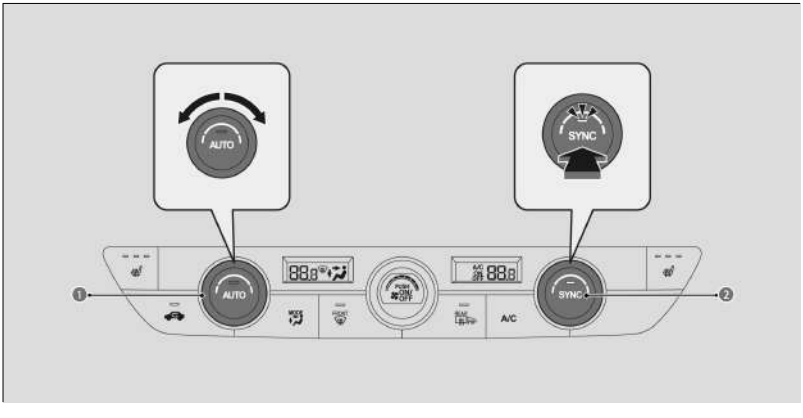
Using the Front Seat Heaters/Ventilators* ►P.152

> ! If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

Synchronization Mode

You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

Using synchronization mode



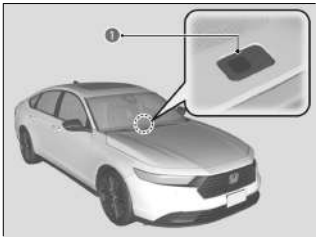
❶ **Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial**
❷ **SYNC Button**

[1] Press the **SYNC** button.
» The system switches to synchronization mode.

[2] Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

- Press the **SYNC** button or adjust the interior temperature using the passenger's side temperature control dial to return to dual mode.
- When you press the FRONT button, the system changes to synchronization mode.
- When the system is in synchronization mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature cannot be set separately.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.

❶ Sensor

❶ Sensor

In-Vehicle Infotainment

About Your In-Vehicle Infotainment

The audio system features AM/FM radio. It can also play USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone, smartphones, and *Bluetooth*® devices.
You can operate the audio system from the knob on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface.

» To use this system, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.

Audio System Theft Protection

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the 12-volt battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

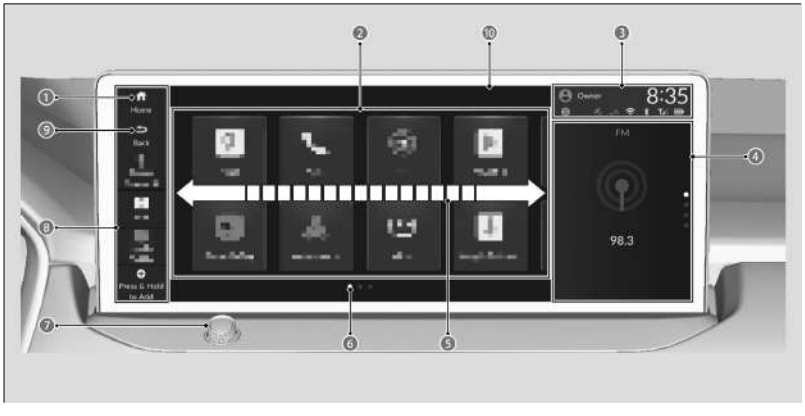
Reactivating the audio system

[1] Set the power mode to ON.
[2] Turn on the audio system.
[3] Press and hold the audio system power knob for more than two seconds.
» The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognize the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

Audio System Basic Operation

Audio System Basic Operation with 12.3" Color Touchscreen

Swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.
Select (Home) icon to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.



❶ (Home) Icon
❷ A-Zone
❸ Status Bar
❹ B-Zone
❺ Swipe
❻ Current Page Position
❼ **VOL/ AUDIO**(Volume/Power) Knob
❽ Mode Change Switch Bar
❾ (Back) icon
❿ Audio/Information Screen

Touchscreen operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be grayed-out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction. You can select them when the vehicle is stopped.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.
How to Customize the General Settings ▶P.202

Selecting an audio source

Select audio source icon in the header area, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

A-Zone

The A-Zone is the main operation area in the 12.3″ Color Touchscreen.

System status

Displays information about your vehicle, connected devices, etc. You can select the status bar to view more details in the status area.

B-Zone

The B-Zone displays a card that is useful while the driver is using another application in the A-Zone.
The following cards are available:

- Suggestions from Google Assistant
- Audio source
- Compass
- Clock
- Navigation (Apple CarPlay or Android Auto)
- Power Flow

You can swipe up and down on the B-Zone to view a different card.
Page position is indicated at the right of the B-Zone.

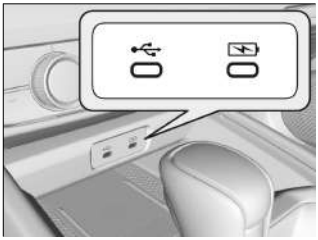
Mode change switch bar

You can also select any application from the mode change switch bar. Shortcuts can be edited to open other applications; however, **Home**, **Back**, and **Google Assistant**[*1] or **Alexa**[*1] cannot be edited.

*1: Only whichever one was set as the default assist app is displayed here.

USB Ports

On the front panel



USB charging/connector port ( )

The USB port (3.0A) is for charging devices, playing audio files, and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

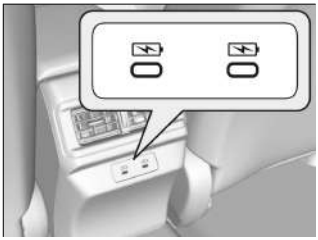
» To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay. USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

USB charging port ( )

The USB ports (3.0A) are only for charging devices.

» You cannot play audio files even if an audio device is connected.

On the back of the console compartment



- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Messages displayed on the Audio System may vary depending on the device model and software version.
- Some devices may not work even if they are connected to the USB ports.

Supplementary information about USB Charging:

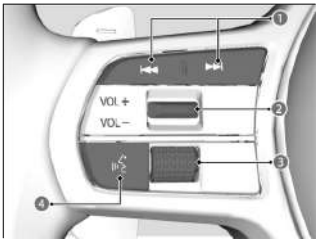
- Charging may not start or may operate slowly depending on the connected devices and cables. Using only one port while not connecting anything (including cables) to the other port may solve the issue.

Do not leave the device or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.

Do not connect the device or USB flash drive using a hub, as they will not operate if you do.

Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.

Audio Remote Controls



Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface or head-up display*.

❶ ⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❷ **VOL+/VOL-** (Volume) Switch
❸ Left Selector Wheel
❹ (Talk) Button

> ❗ Depending on the device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Seek/Skip Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  Press ⏭ : To select the next preset radio station.
  Press ⏮ : To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold ⏭ : To select the next strong station.
  Press and hold ⏮ : To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to a wired connection, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
  » Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.
  Press ⏭ : To skip to the next song.
  Press ⏮ : To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  Press and hold ⏭ : To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold ⏮ : To go back to the previous folder.

VOL+/VOL- (Volume) Switch

Press Up: To increase the volume.
Press Down: To decrease the volume.

Left Selector Wheel

To switch between audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel.

*: Not available on all models

Connecting a Device

With a connected device you can play various files, as well as use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto on the audio/information screen.

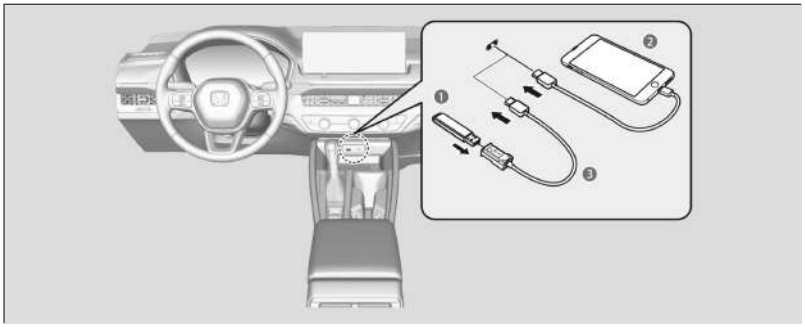
» Depending on the app used, device battery may decrease even with a wired connection.

> ! Always make sure your vehicle is parked in a safe location before connecting a device.

About Wired Connections

Connect a smartphone or USB flash drive to the USB charging/connector port ( ).

» You may need to operate the device.



❶ **USB Flash Drive**
❷ **Device**
❸ **USB Cable**

About Wireless Connections

You can modify *Bluetooth*® function settings.
Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or more icons on the right side. These icons indicate the following:
: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio and HFL.
: The phone is compatible with Apple CarPlay.
: The phone is compatible with Android Auto.
Phone Pairing Tips:

- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Bluetooth® setup

You can turn *Bluetooth*® function on and off.

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **General Settings**.
[3] Select **Connections**.
[4] Select **Manage Device Connections**.
[5] Select **Options**.
[6] Select **Bluetooth**.
[7] Select **ON**.

To pair a cell phone

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **Phone**.
[3] Select **Connect New Device**.
[4] Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then select **Search for Devices**.
» HFL automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
[5] Select your phone when it appears on the list.
» If your phone still does not appear, search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, search for Vehicle Name.
[6] The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
» Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone matches. This may vary by phone.
[7] Select **Yes**.

To change the currently paired phone

[1] Go to the phone screen.
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® ►P.197
[2] Select **Change Devices**.
[3] Select **Go to Device List**.
[4] Select a phone to connect.
» HFL disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
[5] Select **Bluetooth** or **Apple CarPlay**/**Android Auto**.
[6] Select **Yes**.

- To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the *Bluetooth*® screen.

To delete a paired phone

[1] Go to the phone screen.
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® ►P.197
[2] Select **Change Devices**.
[3] Select **Go to Device List**.
[4] Select a phone you want to delete.
[5] Select **Delete Device**.

» A confirmation message appears on the screen.

[6] Select **Delete**.

About System Updates

When a software update is available for your vehicle, a notification will be displayed on the meter or the audio/information screen.
Instructions for performing updates via the audio/information screen are included in this manual.
For details on other methods of performing an update, please refer to the HondaLink manual, or ask a dealer.
System updates that change specifications may result in some discrepancies with the information in this owner's manual.

Instructions

System Updates ▶P.171

12.3" Color Touchscreen Basic Operations

Start Up

The 12.3" color touchscreen starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the disclaimer screen will be displayed. When adding a new user, entry of user information is required at start-up.
Select **OK** on the disclaimer screen.

- 》 If you want to change the settings for data upload, select **Data Sharing with Honda**, then select the **Enable**/**Disable** settings on the **Data Sharing with Honda** screen.
- 》 If you do not select **OK**, the system will automatically be switched to the home screen, or the top screen of the last executed application, after a certain period of time.
- 》 If there is no registered device, the *Bluetooth*® pairing screen will be displayed after selecting **OK** or after a certain period of time.
- 》 If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.

About Wireless Connections ▶P.166

Data Sharing with Honda
Enable: Data communication available.
Disable: Data communication unavailable.

Registering New User Information

[1] Read the disclaimer screen and select **OK**.
[2] Select **Set up profile**.
  》 If you want to change the language, select **English (United States)**.
[3] Name your profile and select **Next**.

▼ Models with Google built-in

[4] You can view the terms and conditions of the Google Services agreement.

▼ All Models

[5] On the System-wide permission Settings screen, select the data you give permission for the system to access, and select **Accept**.

▼ Models with Google built-in

[6] Select **Done for now**.
  》 By selecting **Profile lock**, you can set security settings for your profile.
  》 By selecting **Set up Google Assistant and apps**, you can customize settings related to Google. An internet connection is required to change settings.

Wi-Fi Connection ▶P.191

▼ Models without Google built-in

[6] Select **Done for now**.

» By selecting **Profile lock**, you can set security settings for your profile.

Refer to the Google website for more information on how to set up a profile.

Additional information for Google apps and services is available at *mygarage.honda.com* (U.S.) or *www.honda.ca* (English) / *www.honda.ca/fr* (French) (Canada).

- Specifications may be changed via system updates, etc.

Reboot Audio

You can reboot the audio system.

[1] Select and hold (Home) icon until the reboot dialog screen appears.

[2] Select **Reboot**.

» If **Safe Mode** is selected, the audio system will be rebooted with third-party applications turned off. After the power mode has been turned off once, third-party applications can be used again.

Home Screen

App icons can be added, deleted, or moved on the home screen.

- You cannot delete the **All Apps** icon.
- Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.
- Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

To Add/Remove App Icons on the Home Screen

App icons can be added or removed on the home screen.

[1] Select (Home) icon.

[2] Select **All Apps**.

[3] Select the apps you want to add or remove and check/uncheck the box.

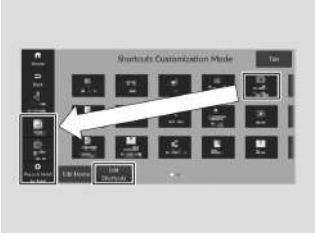
To Move/Remove App Icons on the Home Screen

You can change icon locations on the home screen.

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select and hold an app icon.
[3] Drag and drop the app icon to where you want it to be.
» Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the **Hide** icon.
[4] Select (Home) icon or (Back) icon.
» The screen will return to the home screen.

To Store Shortcut Icons on the Home Screen

You can store up to three*1 or four icons on the mode change switch bar.



[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select and hold an app icon.
[3] Select **Edit Shortcuts**.
[4] Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the left of the home screen.
» You can also store app icons in the mode change switch bar by selecting icon ➔ shortcut location.
[5] Select (Home) icon or (Back) icon.
» The screen will return to the home screen.

*1: Models with Google built-in

System Updates

System Updates uses the telematics control unit (TCU) or Wi-Fi communication capability to operate.
When an update for your system becomes available, a screen prompting you to update your system will be displayed on the audio/information screen.

When a system update is started, the vehicle will be unable to move.

- If new software has been released, perform an update as soon as possible.
- If a system update fails, please consult a dealer.
- System updates that change specifications may result in some discrepancies with the information in this owner's manual. For the most up-to-date information, please refer to the Honda website.
- Certain features may not be available during system updates.

Performing/Scheduling System Updates

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **System Updates** or Status bar ➔ system update message.
[3] Select **Agree to Update** to give permission for the update.
[4] When the power mode is turned to OFF, the permission screen is displayed. Once a system update is started, the vehicle will become unable to move.
  » When you select **Proceed Now**, the system update begins immediately.
  » If you select **Set Update Time**, you can set a time for the update to be performed.
  » If you select **Remind me Later**, you can delay the system update. The permission screen will be displayed again the next time the power mode is turned to OFF.
[5] The next time the power mode is turned to ON, the system update results screen will be displayed.
  » System update results can also be viewed from **Settings ➔ Update History** within **System Updates**.

For important updates, **Remind me Later** will stop displaying after it has been selected a certain number of times.

Make sure your vehicle is stopped in a safe location before starting a system update.

If you have selected **Agree to Update** on the agreement screen when an update is being offered, or **Automatic Update*** is set to **ON**, and the permission screen is not displayed even though the power mode is set to OFF, it may be due to one or more of the conditions listed below. For more information, consult a dealer.

- The hood is open.
- The shift position is not in **P**.
- The vehicle is providing one or more emergency notifications.
- The High Voltage Battery's charge is too low.
- The 12-volt battery is depleted.

If the system is being updated via Wi-Fi, you will not be able to use this feature in some situations based on Wi-Fi authentication methods.
For example:

- The connection requires you to log in.
- Agreement to terms of use is required.

*: Not available on all models

If you are disconnected from the network, the download will be stopped. Download is resumed when a new network connection is established.

System Updates Settings

By selecting **Settings** and selecting a settings item, you can change or confirm the system update settings.
The following settings items can be set.

- **Automatic Update***
- **Automatic Download**
- **Control Unit Versions**
- **Connection Setup**
  Wi-Fi Connection ▶P.191
- **Update History**

To perform a system update via Wi-Fi, change settings for connecting to Wi-Fi.
Wi-Fi Connection ▶P.191

Trip Computer

Displays the trip computer information.

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **Trip Computer**.

- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **Trip A**/**Trip B** tab: Displays information for the current and three previous drives. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A/B.
  To reset Trip A/B, select **Menu**, then select **Delete Trip History**.
  To change the setting of how to reset Trip A/B, select **Menu**, then select **"Trip A" Reset Timing** or **"Trip B" Reset Timing**.

Clock

Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time manually in the audio/information screen when the power mode is in ON.

*: Not available on all models

》 The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.
》 The Guest user cannot adjust the clock.

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **General Settings**.
[3] Select **System**.
[4] Select **Date & Time**.
[5] Select **Set Date & Time**.
[6] Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **Off**.

▼ To adjust time

[7] Select **Set Time**.
[8] Select ▲ / ▼.
》 **AM**/**PM** icon can be switched to each other either by selecting ▲ / ▼, or by directly touching the icon.
[9] Select the (Back) icon to set the time.

▼ To adjust date

[7] Select **Set Date**.
[8] Select ▲ / ▼.
[9] Select the (Back) icon to set the time.

You can also adjust the clock by selecting the clock image or time displayed on the B-Zone.

[1] Select **Date & Time** on the A-Zone.
[2] Select **Set Date & Time**.
[3] Select **Automatic Date & Time**.
[4] Select **Off**.
[5] Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
[6] Select ▲ / ▼ to adjust the dates, hours, and minutes.
[7] Select the (Back) icon to set the date or time.

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.
How to Customize the General Settings ▶P.202

You can customize the date display.
How to Customize the General Settings ▶P.202

Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.
》 The maximum image size is 4,096 × 2,304 pixels and the data size is less than 10 MB.

Import wallpaper

[1] Connect the USB flash drive to the USB charging/connector port.
USB Ports ▶P.164

[2] Select **Clock**.
[3] Select **Menu**.
[4] Select **Clock Faces**.
[5] Select **Add More**.
[6] Import a desired picture.
» Multiple pictures can be imported at the same time.
[7] Select **Select Files**.
[8] Select **Add Files**.

Select wallpaper

[1] Select **Clock**.
[2] Select **Menu**.
[3] Select **Clock Faces**.
[4] Select a desired wallpaper.
[5] Select **Save**.

Delete wallpaper

[1] Select **Clock**.
[2] Select **Menu**.
[3] Select **Clock Faces**.
[4] Select **Delete Files**.
[5] Select **Select Files to Delete**.
» If you want to delete all wallpapers, select **Delete All Files**.
[6] Select a desired wallpaper.
[7] Select **Select Files**.
[8] Select **Delete Files**.

> ! Do not turn off your vehicle or remove the USB memory immediately after changing or importing wallpaper. A saving error may occur, and USB data may be corrupted.

Adjusting the Sound

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select an audio source icon.

▼ AM/FM Radio mode

[3] Select **Menu**.

[4] Select **Sound Settings**.
[5] Select the setting you want.

▼ USB Audio, *Bluetooth*® Audio mode

[3] Select **Sound**.
[4] Select the setting you want.

Select an item from the following choices:

- **Speed Volume Compensation**[*2]: Sets the amount of volume increase.
- **Bass / Mid / Treble**: Bass, Midrange, Treble
- **Balance / Fader**[*2]: Balance, Fader
- **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**[*1]: Driver Only, Front Only, Rear Only, Full Vehicle, Balance, Fader
- **Bose Centerpoint**[*1]: Bose Centerpoint
- **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**[*1]: Sets the amount of volume increase.

You can also adjust the sound by the following procedure.

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **General Settings**.
[3] Select **Sound**.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Mid / Treble**, **Balance / Fader**[*2], **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**[*1] and **Speed Volume Compensation**[*2] select **Reset to Default** in each setting item.

*1: Models with Google built-in
*2: Models without Google built-in

Changing the Display Settings

You can change the brightness of the audio/information screen.

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **General Settings**.
[3] Select **Display**.
[4] Select the setting you want.
  » To reset the settings, select **Reset to Default**.

Alexa Built-In

You can talk to Amazon Alexa through the audio system. With Alexa, you can:

- Stream music.
- Check the weather.
- Answer questions.

- Control smart home devices.
- And more with supported Alexa skills.

Support Resources

For more information or client support:

- Call Honda Customer Service at 1 (800) 999-1009.
- Go to *https://www.amazon.com/alexasupport*.

You can change the voice assistant from Alexa to Google Assistant.

How to Customize the General Settings ▶P.202

Using Alexa

Once you sign into Alexa in the vehicle, you can use Alexa without opening the app. You can trigger Alexa by doing any of the following:

- Say the wake word "*Alexa*" from anywhere in the audio system.
- Press the (Talk) button on the steering wheel.
- Select the **Alexa** icon from inside the app.

Troubleshooting Tips:

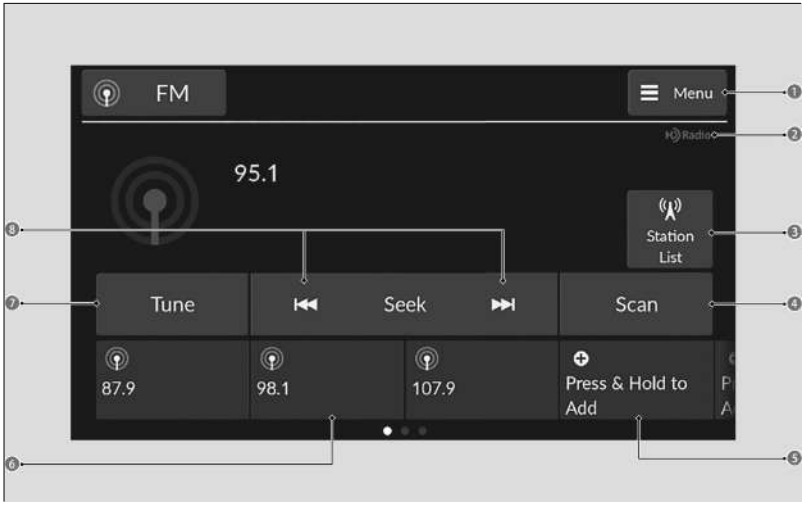
- Make sure you are connected to Alexa via Wi-Fi network, AT&T Vehicle Data Plan (U.S.)/Bell Data Plan (Canada).
- If using an AT&T Vehicle Data Plan, confirm that your subscription is active.
- Make sure you are logged into your Amazon account.

Deleting Your Alexa Settings from the Vehicle

For your privacy and security, if you transfer the vehicle to a third-party, reset all vehicle settings to default and delete all personal data. Also, remove the vehicle from the list of devices in your phone's Alexa app.

Defaulting All the Settings ▶P.211

Playing AM/FM Radio



1. **Menu** Icon
2. HD Radio™ Icon
3. **Station List**
4. **Scan** Icon
5. **Press & Hold to Add**
6. Preset Icons
7. **Tune** Icon
8. **Seek** Icons

▼Models with HD Radio™ feature

HD Subchannel

Displays the subchannel list when an HD Radio™ station is selected while listening to an FM station.

[1] Select **Station List**.
[2] Select the channel number.

AM/FM Settings

By selecting **Menu** and selecting a settings item, you can change the AM/FM settings. The following settings items can be set.

- **HD Radio**: Automatically choose a digital or an analog channel, or listen to analog only.
- **Artwork**: Turns the artwork display on and off.

Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

[1] Select **Station List** to display a list.
[2] Select the station.

Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

[1] Select **Station List** to display a list.
[2] Select **Refresh**.

Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

» When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

To find an RDS station from station list

[1] Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
[2] Select the station.

Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

[1] Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
[2] Select **Refresh**.

Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for a few seconds. To turn off scan, select **Stop** or select (Back) icon.

Favorite Station

To switch the favorite station, select the preset icon.

» Swipe the preset icon area to display the next preset icons.

To add a station:

[1] Tune to the selected station.
[2] Select and hold **Press & Hold to Add**.
» You can store 12 AM/FM stations into preset memory.

Editing a favorite station

Select and hold the desired favorite station icon.

The following items are available:

- **Remove Favorite**: Delete the favorite station icon from the favorite station list.
- **Replace with** (number): Replace the stored favorite station icon.
- **Add to Home**: Add the shortcut icon of the stored favorite station to the home screen.

Tune

Select to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.

Seek

Select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to search up and down on the selected band for a station with a strong signal.

About Audio Playback

By connecting a device to the audio system, you can play audio files.

> ❗ It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

- Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.
- Depending on the connected device, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

About Play Modes

Shuffle/Repeat

Repeatedly select the shuffle or repeat icon until you find a play mode option of your preference.

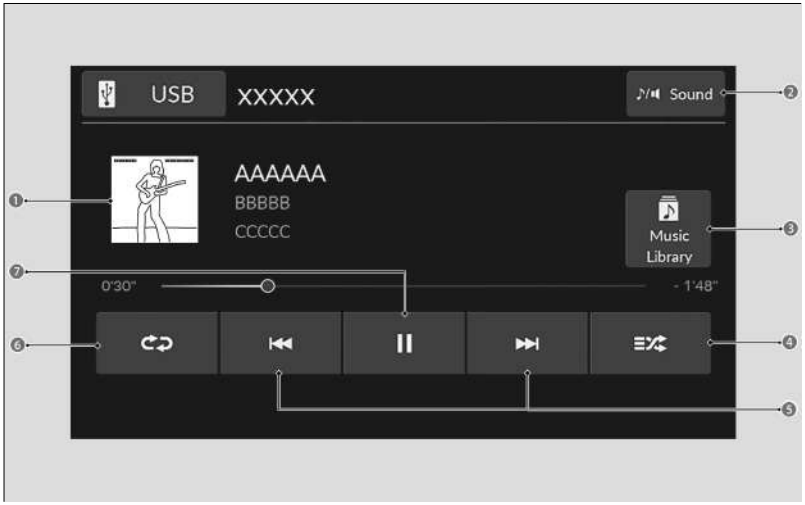
- **Shuffle off**: Shuffle mode to off.
- **Shuffle all**: Plays all available songs in random order.
- **Shuffle in folder**[*1]: Plays all songs in the current folder in random order.
- **Repeat off**: Repeat mode to off.
- **Repeat track**: Repeats the current song.
- **Repeat folder/group**[*2]: Repeats all songs in the current folder/group.
- **Repeat all**: Repeats all songs (in the current folder[*2]).

*1: When playing a song via USB device
*2: When playing a song using *Bluetooth*® Audio

Audio Playback via Wired Connection

Connect a device, such as an iPod or iPhone to the USB charging/connector port, then select the **USB** icon.

About Wired Connections ►P.166



❶ Cover Art
❷ **Sound** Icon
❸ **Music Library** Icon
❹ Shuffle Icon
❺ Track Icons
❻ Repeat Icon
❼ Play/Pause Icon

If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay, the USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay.

Track icons

Select ⏮ or ⏭ to change songs.
Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

How to select a song from the music search list

[1] Select **Music Library**.
[2] Select a search category (e.g., Artists, Albums, etc.).
[3] Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

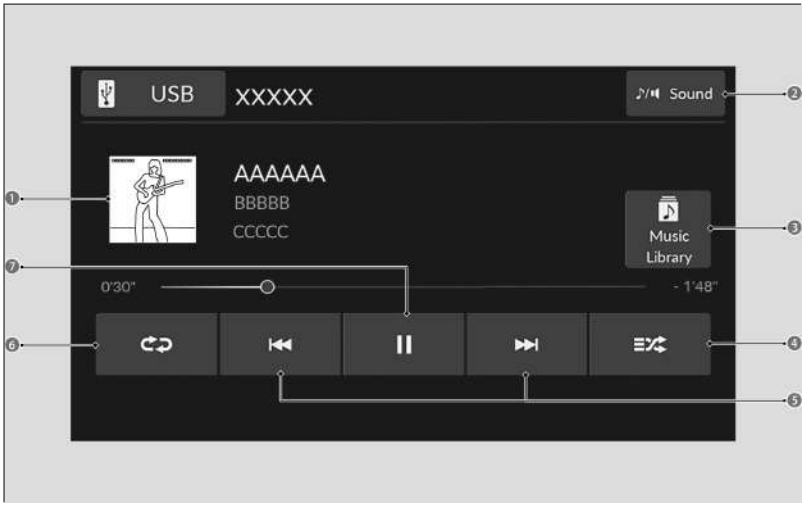
Audio Playback via USB Device

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB charging/connector port, then select the **USB** icon.

About Wired Connections ►P.166

The audio system can read certain USB drive formats to play audio files.

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives ►P.212



1. **Cover Art**
2. **Sound** Icon
3. **Music Library** Icon
4. **Shuffle Icon**
5. **Track Icons**
6. **Repeat Icon**
7. **Play/Pause Icon**

> WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

Track icons

Select ⏮ or ⏭ to change songs.
Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

How to select a song from the music search list

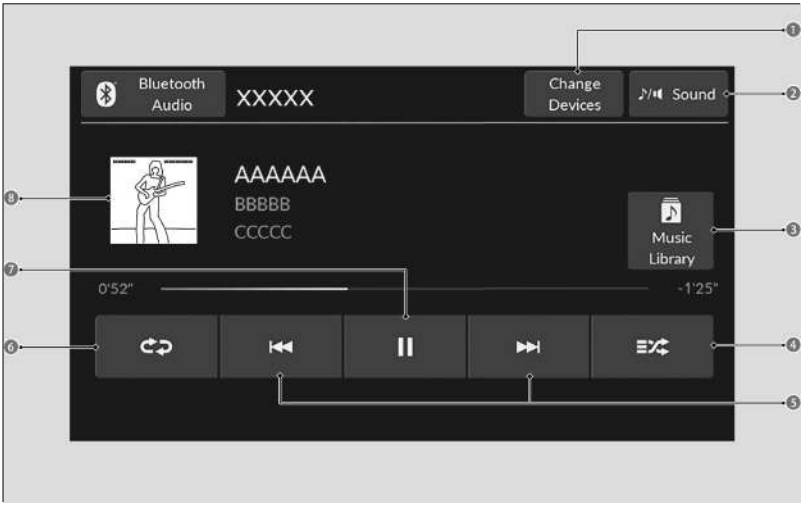
[1] Select **Music Library**.

[2] Select a search category (e.g., Artists, Albums, etc.).
[3] Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

Audio Playback via *Bluetooth*® Device

Your audio system allows you to listen to audio files from your *Bluetooth*®-compatible phone.
This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.

About Wireless Connections ▶P.166



1. **Change Devices**
2. **Sound** Icon
3. **Music Library** Icon
4. Shuffle Icon
5. Track Icons
6. Repeat Icon
7. Play/Pause Icon
8. Cover Art

- Not all *Bluetooth*®-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. For a list of compatible phones:
  - U.S.: Visit *https://mygarage.honda.com/s/honda-handsfreelink-compatibility-check*, or call 1-888-528-7876.
  - Canada: Call 1-855-490-7351.

- Only one phone can be used with HFL at a time. When there is more than one paired phone in the vehicle, the system automatically connects to the prioritized phone. You can assign priority to a phone in the *Bluetooth*® device list.
  About Wireless Connections ▶P.166
- If more than one phone is paired to the HFL, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.
- If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable.
- To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone manufacturer's operating instructions.
- Switching to another mode pauses the audio files playing from your phone.
- You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change Devices**.
  About Wireless Connections ▶P.166

Track icons

Select ⏮ or ⏭ to change songs.
Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

How to select a song from the music search list

[1] Select **Music Library**.
[2] Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
[3] Select an item.

Google built-in*

You can use the features available with Google built-in on the audio/information screen.

- Google, Google Play, and Google Maps are trademarks of Google LLC.
- For more details on Google apps and services' features, visit the Google website.

Additional information for Google apps and services is available at *mygarage.honda.com* (U.S.) or *www.honda.ca* (English) (Canada) / *www.honda.ca/fr* (French) (Canada).

*: Not available on all models

Google Assistant

You can operate features with hands-free help from Google Assistant.
You can activate Google Assistant by:

- Saying “Hey Google.”
  » Wake words vary by region and language. Refer to the Google website for more information.
- Pressing the (Talk) button on the steering wheel.
- Selecting the Google Assistant icon on the audio/information screen.

Below are examples of things you can ask Google Assistant:

- Play music.
- Play radio.

You can customize language and other settings regarding Google Assistant.
How to Customize the General Settings ►P.202

Google Maps

Google Maps helps you reach your next destination faster with real-time traffic info, automatic rerouting, and voice control.

- Operate when vehicle is stopped in a safe location.
- When your Google Account is linked with a valid user, destinations stored on other devices (home, work, favorites, previous searches, etc.) can be displayed. When the device and the vehicle are logged into the same Google Account, changing information on the device will change it on Google Maps as well.

Google Play

Download your favorite apps on Google Play.

- The vehicle must be stopped in order to download an app.
- Operate when vehicle is stopped in a safe location.

User Information

You can add and change users, as well as customize user settings. By registering a user, you can personalize your vehicle settings. You can select a user when the audio/information screen loads, even when the doors are open or unlocked.

1 User Information

▼ Models with Google built-in

By linking your profile with your Google Account, you can enjoy a more personalized experience with Google built-in. For more assistance on account linking, visit the Google website.

You can customize settings individually for each user.
How to Customize the Profile Settings ►P.210

- You can customize security settings for each user. If you have forgotten security settings, you will need to delete the user and create a new one. If you have forgotten security settings for the Owner user, please contact a dealer or Honda Customer Service.
Contacts ►P.396
- Certain features are unavailable when using a newly created user or the Guest user.

Registering a User

[1] Select User Information.
» You can also add users when **Profile Settings → Change Profile** is selected.
How to Customize the Profile Settings ►P.210
» You can add users even when the doors are open and unlocked.

[2] Select **Change Profile**.

[3] Select **+Add User**.

[4] Select **OK**.
[5] Enter user information.
Start Up ►P.169

- You can add up to four users other than the Owner user and the Guest user.
- When you add a user, the audio/information screen is loaded under that user.

Switching Users

[1] Select User Information.
» You can also change users when **Profile Settings → Change Profile** is selected.
How to Customize the Profile Settings ►P.210
» You can switch users even when the doors are open and unlocked.
[2] Select **Change Profile**.
[3] Select the user you want to use.

- Users with customized security settings can restrict screen operations by selecting the **Screen Lock** shortcut.

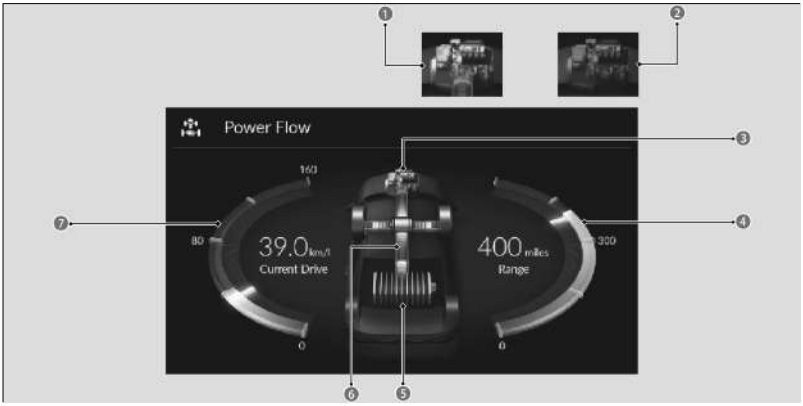
Deleting Users

[1] Select **Profile Settings**.
[2] Select **Manage Profile**.
[3] Select **Your Profile**.
[4] Select **Delete**.

- When the profile currently being used is deleted, the audio/information screen is loaded under the Guest user.
- While using the Owner user, you can delete other users via **General Settings → Advanced Settings**.
How to Customize the General Settings ►P.202
- Depending on the version of your OS, the steps for deleting a user may differ from the instructions on this page. Follow the on-screen prompts.

Power Flow

Displays the motor and engine power flow, average fuel economy, and range.

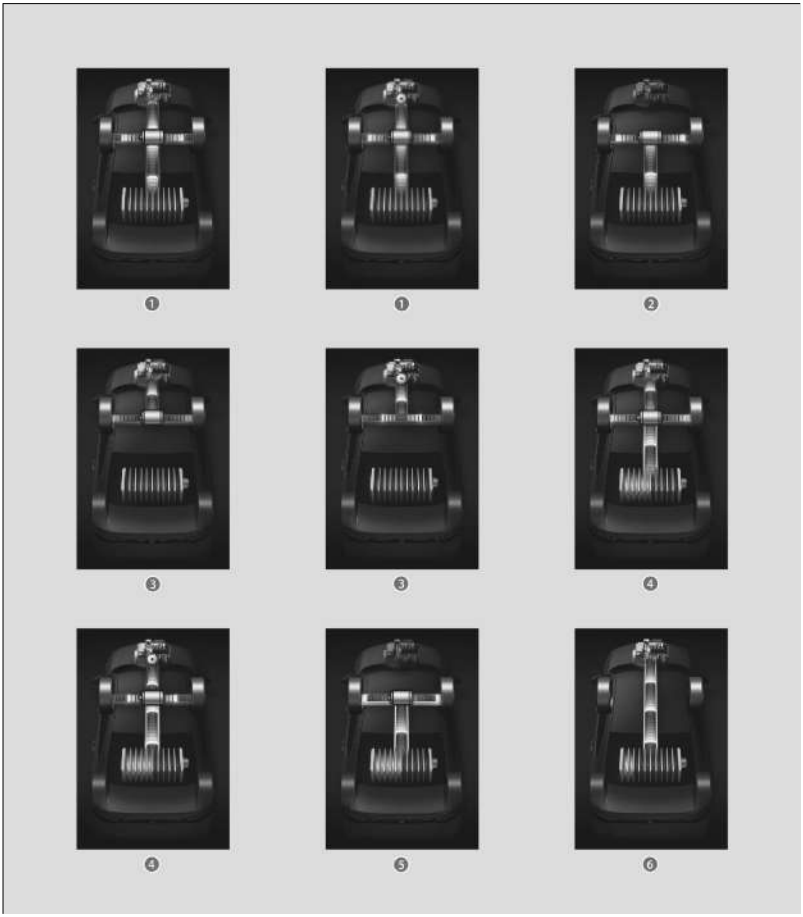


❶ **Engine ON**
❷ **Engine OFF**
❸ **Engine**
❹ **Driving Range**
❺ **High Voltage Battery Level Gauge**
❻ **Power Flow**
❼ **Average Fuel Economy (Current Drive)**

- While the engine provides propulsion directly to the wheels, the icon appears in the power flow monitor on the screen.
- The power flow monitor is also displayed on the driver information interface.
  Power Flow Monitor ►P.297

Displays the power flow, indicating what is supplying power to the vehicle and/or charging the battery.

》 The indicator for the power transmission appears in blue, and for the battery charging operation, in green.



❶ Power is being supplied by the High Voltage battery and the engine-driven generator. (Blue)
❷ Power is being supplied by the High Voltage battery. (Blue)
❸ Power is being supplied by the engine-driven generator. (Blue)
❹ Power is being supplied directly by the engine and the High Voltage battery is being charged by the engine-driven generator. (Blue and Green)
❺ The High Voltage battery is being charged through regenerative braking. (Green)
❻ The High Voltage battery is being charged by the engine-driven generator. (Green)

12.3" Color Touchscreen Other Operations

HondaLink®

HondaLink® connects you to the latest information from Honda. You can connect your phone wirelessly through Wi-Fi or *Bluetooth*® and the HondaLink® icon is selected, you can operate HondaLink® on the audio/information screen.

Wi-Fi Connection ►P.191

About Wireless Connections ►P.166

- If your vehicle has a telematics control unit (TCU), you can use HondaLink® without connecting the phone.
- The HondaLink® connect app is compatible with most iPhone and Android phones.
- If the system is connected to the HondaLink® connect app through *Bluetooth*® and another *Bluetooth*® audio device is connected, the *Bluetooth*® connection to the HondaLink® connect app will be severed.
- Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.
- If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, HondaLink® can only be connected through Wi-Fi.

To Connect to HondaLink®

Use the following procedure to connect to HondaLink®.

To enable the HondaLink® service

You must consent to location sharing to enable the HondaLink® service.

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **General Settings**.
[3] Select **Privacy**.
[4] Select **Data Sharing with Honda**.
[5] Select **Enable**.

To link with HondaLink®

You can see the connection guide screen after launching HondaLink® when there is no connection to a network. If you do not need this guide, select the check-box and select **OK**.

HondaLink® Menu

The following items can be used.

- **Vehicle Notifications**: Displays instruction messages when the vehicle needs service.
- **Connect Honda**: Displays tips for vehicle usage and gets support via roadside assistance or customer service center.

- **Connect**: Displays your phone connection status and HondaLink® subscription status.

HondaLink® Service

Is a subscription-based service that provides convenient features such as voice communication in case of emergency, online security, and one-on-one operator assistance.

- HondaLink® also provides services you can operate from the Internet or your smartphone. To subscribe to HondaLink®, or to get more information about all of its features, contact a Honda dealer, or visit: *https://mygarage.honda.com/s/hondalink-marketing* (U.S.) or *https://www.honda.ca/en/hondalink* (English) (Canada) / *https://www.honda.ca/fr/hondalink* (French) (Canada).

Wi-Fi Connection

This vehicle is equipped with Wi-Fi connectivity. You can connect to an external Wi-Fi hotspot or communication device. In addition, the vehicle can be used by other communication devices as a Wi-Fi hotspot via the telematics control unit (TCU).

- Connect the vehicle to a Wi-Fi hotspot
- Use Wi-Fi Inside the Vehicle

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

Use Wi-Fi Inside the Vehicle

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **General Settings**.
[3] Select **Connections**.
[4] Select **Wi-Fi**.
» To change the Wi-Fi settings, select **Options**.
[5] Select the access point you want to connect to the system.
[6] Select **Connect**.
» When the connection is successful, the status text **Connected** next to the network name is displayed on the list.
[7] Select (Home) icon to go back to the home screen.

- You cannot go through the setting procedure while the vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.
- Some cell phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.
- Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

- You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the icon on the Wi-Fi network list. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.
- In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
- When you select **Access Point**, you can set up a wireless connection from the phone to the vehicle.

How to Customize the General Settings ▶P.202

Connect to the In-vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

You can set the network as a Wi-Fi Hotspot of this audio system.

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **General Settings**.
[3] Select **Connections**.
[4] Select **Data Connection Options**.
[5] Select **Set Up Wi-Fi**.
[6] Select **Options**.
[7] Select **Add Network**.
[8] Select **Connect**.

The following options are available for the setup.

- **Network SSID**: Set this network name.
- **Security**: Set a password to be required when connecting a Wi-Fi device to this network.

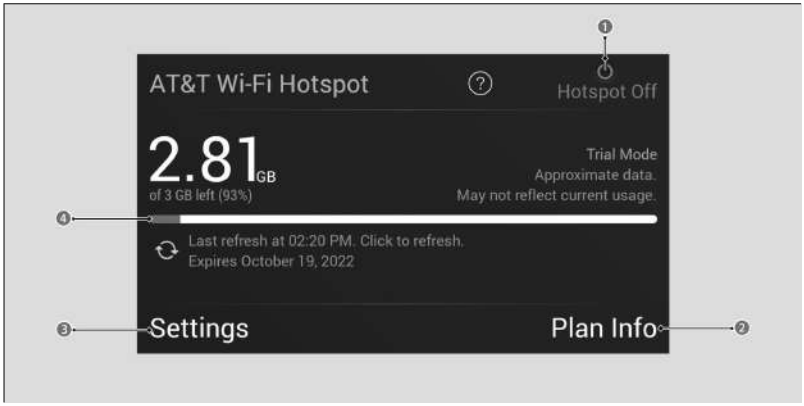
AT&T Hotspot

If you have subscribed to AT&T Hotspot services, your vehicle will provide data to connect your mobile devices to the Internet. You can use the AT&T Hotspot app to turn vehicle data on/off and monitor data usage left on your subscription.

- To use AT&T Hotspot services, your vehicle must be subscribed to a data plan. If your vehicle is not subscribed to a data plan, you can visit:
  U.S.: *www.att.com/honda*
  Canada: *https://myvehicle.att.com/#/honda/learn?country=CA&language=en* (English)
  https://myvehicle.att.com/#/honda/learn?country=CA&language=fr (French)
- Alternatively, you can use your mobile hotspot to connect the vehicle and other mobile devices to the Internet.

Wi-Fi Connection ▶P.191

AT&T Hotspot Menu



❶ Hotspot Enable
Turns AT&T Hotspot on/off.

❷ Plan Info
Shows your current AT&T subscription plan for the vehicle.

❸ Settings
Shows the current network SSID and password for vehicle Hotspot. **Settings** can be changed while the vehicle is not in motion.

❹ Data Usage Bar
Checks the current status of your data plan. This Usage Bar will show your current plan and how much data remains on your plan. Subscription plans for AT&T Hotspot can be added/modified at:
U.S.: *www.att.com/honda*
Canada: *https://myvehicle.att.com/#/honda/learn?country=CA&language=en* (English)
https://myvehicle.att.com/#/honda/learn?country=CA&language=fr (French)

❺ Help

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via USB port or wirelessly, and the **Apple CarPlay** icon is selected, you can operate Apple CarPlay on the audio/information screen.

Connecting a Device ▶P.166

- We recommend that you update iOS to the latest version when using Apple CarPlay.
- Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

- You can use the method below to change Apple CarPlay settings after you have completed the initial setup:
  Select (Home) icon ➔ Select **General Settings ➔ Connections ➔ Manage Device Connections ➔** Select device.
- While connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®. You can only make calls or listen to music through Apple CarPlay.
  If you want to make a call with *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink®, turn Apple CarPlay OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone. Other previously paired devices can also use *Bluetooth*® Audio.
- Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.
- When using Hands Free, you can only control it with Siri.
  Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri ►P.195
- For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple website.
- **Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations**
  Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.
  Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.
- It is possible to use third-party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple website for information on compatible apps.
- Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the collection of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) from your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.
- **Use of user and vehicle information**
  The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.
- Wireless Apple CarPlay and AT&T Hotspot cannot be used at the same time. When using Apple CarPlay and AT&T Hotspot at the same time, connect to Apple CarPlay with a USB cable.
- If there is a problem with the connection of your iPhone, an error code will be displayed.
  How to Customize the General Settings ►P.202

Apple CarPlay Menu

For details on available applications, please refer to the Apple CarPlay website.
Apps displayed on your screen can be changed with your iPhone.
Select the **Honda** icon on the Apple CarPlay menu screen to go back to the home screen.

Connecting Apple CarPlay Using the USB Cable

Connect the iPhone to the USB charging/connector port.
About Wired Connections ►P.166

If another phone is already connected to the audio system, the confirmation screen will appear, and then select **Continue Connecting**.

Connecting Apple CarPlay Wirelessly

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **Apple CarPlay**.
[3] Select **Check Device List** or **Connect New Phone**.
[4] Pair the iPhone to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.
About Wireless Connections ▶P.166
[5] Select **Yes**.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the (Talk) button to activate Siri.
Press again to deactivate Siri.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.
Audio Remote Controls ▶P.165

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

Android Auto™

If you connect an Android™ phone to the system via USB port or wirelessly, and the **Android Auto** icon is selected, you can operate Android Auto on the audio/information screen.
Connecting a Device ▶P.166

- We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto. *Bluetooth*® A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.
- Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.
- Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.
- You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:
  Select (Home) icon ➔ Select **General Settings** ➔ **Connections** ➔ **Manage Device Connections** ➔ Select device.
- Apple CarPlay and Android Auto cannot run at the same time.

- To use each of Android Auto's features, say "Hey Google" while the Android Auto screen is displayed, or press and hold the (Talk) button to activate Google Assistant.
  Operating Android Auto with Google Assistant ►P.197
- For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto website.
- **Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations**
  Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.
  Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.
- It is possible to use third-party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto website for information on compatible apps.
- **Use of user and vehicle information**
  The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by Google's Privacy Policy.
- Wireless Android Auto and AT&T Hotspot cannot be used at the same time. When using Android Auto and AT&T Hotspot at the same time, connect to Android Auto with a USB cable.
- If there is a problem with the connection of your smartphone, an error code will be displayed.
  How to Customize the General Settings ►P.202

Android Auto Menu

For details on available applications, please refer to the Android Auto website.
Apps displayed on your screen can be changed with your smartphone.
Select the **Honda** icon on the Android Auto menu screen to go back to the home screen.

Connecting Android Auto Using the USB Cable

Connect the Android phone to the USB charging/connector port.
About Wired Connections ►P.166
If another phone is already connected to the audio system, the confirmation screen will appear, and then select **Continue Connecting**.

Connecting Android Auto Wirelessly

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **Android Auto**.
[3] Select **Connect Phone** or **Search for Devices**.
[4] Pair the Android phone to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system.
About Wireless Connections ►P.166
[5] Select **Yes**.

Operating Android Auto with Google Assistant

Press and hold the (Talk) button to talk to Google Assistant.
Press and release to activate the standard voice recognition system.

Audio Remote Controls ▶P.165

Below are examples of commands you can give with Google Assistant:

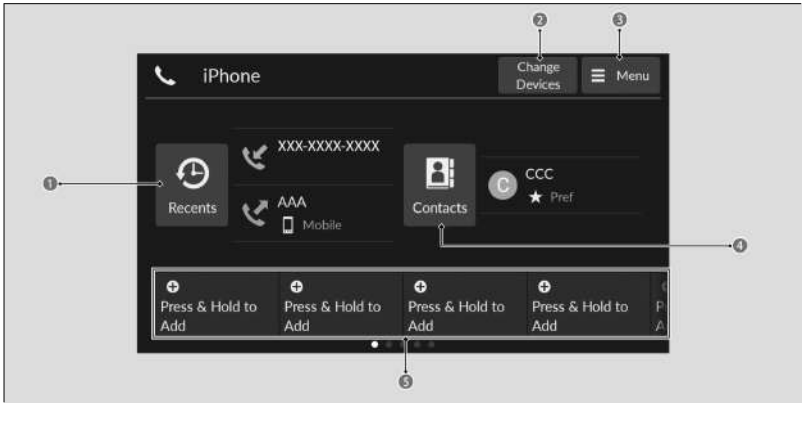
- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto website.

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system without handling your cell phone. Select the **Phone** icon when your phone is connected to the system wirelessly.

About Wireless Connections ▶P.166



❶ **Recents**
❷ **Change Devices**
❸ **Menu**
❹ **Contacts**
❺ **Favorite Contacts**

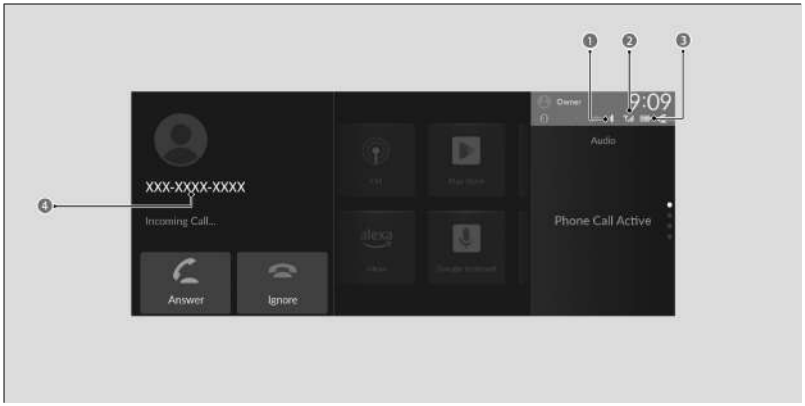
- To use the system, the *Bluetooth*® setting must be ON.

How to Customize the General Settings ▶P.202

- *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology
  The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth*® SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- **HFL Limitations**
  An incoming call on HFL will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.
- When you select a name from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.
- On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.
- Depending on the connected cell phone, some features may not be available.

HFL Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



❶ ***Bluetooth*® Indicator**
Appears when your phone is connected to HFL.

❷ **Signal Strength**
❸ **Battery Level Status**
❹ **Name saved in contacts/Caller's Number (if not registered)**

- The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

Favorite Contacts

To add a favorite contact

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **Phone**.
[3] Select and hold **Press & Hold to Add**.
[4] Select **From Recents**, **From Contacts**, or **Using Enter Number**.

▼ From Recents, From Contacts

[5] Select a phone number.

▼ Using Enter Number

[5] Input number, and select **Enter**.

To edit a favorite contact

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **Phone**.
[3] Select and hold a favorite contact.
[4] Select **Edit Favorites**.
» To delete a favorite contact, select **Remove Favorite**.
[5] Select a setting you want.
[6] Select **Enter** or select type.

Add a favorite contact to homepage

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **Phone**.
[3] Select and hold a favorite contact.
[4] Select **Add to Home**.

Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, or favorite contact entries.

To make a call using the imported phonebook

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **Phone**.
[3] Select **Contacts**.
[4] Select a name.
» You can sort by **First Name** or **Last Name**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
[5] Select a number.
» Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using a phone number

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **Phone**.
[3] Select **Menu**.
[4] Select **Keypad**.
[5] Select a number.
[6] Select **Call**.

» Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the call history

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Missed**, and **Received**.

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **Phone**.
[3] Select **Recents**.
» You can sort by **All**, **Dialed**, **Missed**, or **Received** when you select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
[4] Select a number or contact name.
» Dialing starts automatically.

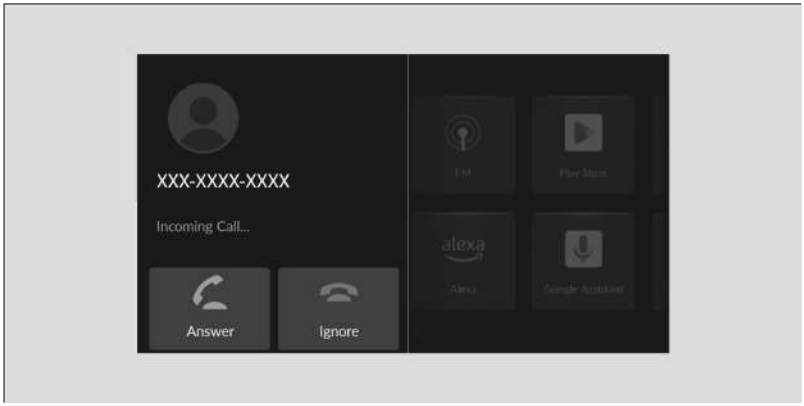
The call history appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

To make a call using a favorite contact entry

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **Phone**.
[3] Select a favorite contact.
» Dialing starts automatically.

Receiving a Call

When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.



To answer the call:
Select the (**Answer**) icon.
You can also answer the call using the left selector wheel roll up or down to select (**Answer**) on the driver information interface.

To decline or end the call:
Select the (**Ignore**) icon.
You can also ignore the call using the left selector wheel roll up or down to select (**Ignore**) on the driver information interface.

Call Waiting:
- Select the (**Answer**) icon to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.
- Select using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.
- Select the (**Ignore**) icon to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.
- Select if you want to hang up the current call.

Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.
- **Hang Up**: End the call. Calls can also be ended from the driver information interface by using the left selector wheel roll up or down.
- **Keypad**: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.
  Making a Call ▶P.199
- **Mute**: Mute your voice.
- **Transfer to Mobile**: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

Phone Menu Screen

By selecting **Menu** and selecting a settings item, you can change the *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® system settings.

The following settings items can be set.
- **Keypad**: Enter a phone number to dial.
- **Latest Call History**: Set whether the history shortcut is displayed in the phone screen.
- **Auto Sync Phone**: Set phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFL.
- **Auto Phone Call Transfer**: Set calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle.
- **Ringtone**: Select a fixed ringtone or the one from the connected cell phone.

12.3" Color Touchscreen Customized Features

Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

> When you customize settings, make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop and shift to P.

How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, select (Home) icon, select **General Settings**, and select a setting item.

List of Customizable Options

System

Date & Time ➔ Set Date & Time

Automatic Date & Time

On/**Off**

Set Date

Adjusts date.

Adjusting the Clock ▶P.173

Set Time

Adjusts clock.

Adjusting the Clock ▶P.173

Date & Time ➔ Time Zone

Automatic Time Zone

On/**Off**

(Select time zone)

Changes the time zone manually.

Date & Time ➔ Auto Daylight Saving Time

On/**Off**

Date & Time ➔ Date Format

Day-of-week, MM DD, YYYY/**YYYY.MM.DD Day-of-week**/**YYYY.MM.DD (Day-of-week)**/**Day-of-week DD.MM.YYYY**/**DD.MM.YYYY**

Date & Time ➔ Time Format

12H/**24H**

Language

English (United States)/**Espanol**/**Francais**

Touch Panel Sensitivity

Low/**High**

About ➔ IP Address

Displays the Android setting items.

About ➔ Wi-Fi MAC Address

Displays the Android setting items.

About ➔ Bluetooth MAC Address

Displays the Android setting items.

About ➔ Serial Number

Displays the Android setting items.

About ➔ Up Time

Displays the Android setting items.

About ➔ Model Number

Displays the Android setting items.

About ➔ Android Version

Displays the Android setting items.

About ➔ Kernel Version

Displays the Android setting items.

About ➔ Build Number

Displays the Android setting items.

About ➔ Software Version

Displays the Android setting items.

Factory Data Reset

Cancel/**Continue**

Connections

Manage Device Connections ➔ Options

Bluetooth

On/**Off**

Priority Device Information

Displays the priority device.

Change Name

Changes vehicle name for *Bluetooth*® connection setting.

Smartphone Projection Screen Size

Normal/**Wide**

Smartphone Projection Error Code

Displays the error code(s) of the smartphone projection.

Manage Device Connections ➔ + Connect New Device

Pairs a new device to HFL.

About Wireless Connections ►P.166

Manage Device Connections ➔ (Saved Devices)

Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired device.

About Wireless Connections ►P.166

Wi-Fi ➔ Options

Wi-Fi

Off/**On**

Add Network

Allows you to connect to a new external network.

Saved Networks

Deletes a saved network or changes update permission settings for the selected network.

Wi-Fi ➔ (Detected Networks)

Displays the detected network(s).

Access Point ➔ Options

Access Point

Off/**On**

Edit Access Point Settings

Allows you to confirm hotspot settings and edit hotspot connection information.

Data Connection Options ➔ Set Up Wi-Fi

Sets personal hotspot (phone tethering).

Wi-Fi Connection ▶P.191

Data Connection Options ➔ Set Up Vehicle Data Plan

Sets AT&T vehicle data plan.

AT&T Hotspot ▶P.192

Privacy

Data Sharing with Honda

Disable/**Enable**

Microphone

Turns the microphone on and off. eCall can still be used regardless of settings.

Location

Sets the data sharing permission for each function.

App permissions

Sets the data sharing permission for each function.

System-wide Permission Settings

Sets the data sharing permission for each function.

Infotainment system data

Sets the data sharing permission for each function.

Data sharing with Google*1

Sets the data sharing permission for each function.

Ads

Sets the data sharing permission for each function.

Google legal*1 ➔ Google Terms of Service*1

Displays the Google URL.

Google legal*1 ➔ Google Privacy Policy*1

Displays the Google URL.

*1: Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen. Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

Display

Brightness

Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.

Contrast

Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.

Black Level

Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.

Day Mode*1

Changes between daytime mode and night mode.

Night Mode*1

Changes between daytime mode and night mode.

Display Off

Turns the audio/information screen brightness off.

*1: When the AID sensor is disabled.

Sound

Bass / Mid / Treble ➔ Treble

Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.

Adjusting the Sound ▶P.175

Bass / Mid / Treble ➔ Midrange

Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.

Adjusting the Sound ▶P.175

Bass / Mid / Treble ➔ Bass

Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.

Adjusting the Sound ▶P.175

Balance / Fader*

Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.

Adjusting the Sound ▶P.175

Audio Zones & Balance / Fader*

Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.

Adjusting the Sound ▶P.175

Speed Volume Compensation*

Adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed.

Adjusting the Sound ▶P.175

Bose Centerpoint*

Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound.

Adjusting the Sound ▶P.175

Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation*

Adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed.

Adjusting the Sound ▶P.175

*: Not available on all models

Sound Volume

System Sounds

Adjusts the sound volume.

Navigation Guidance

Adjusts the sound volume.

Voice Recognition

Adjusts the sound volume.

Phone Calls

Adjusts the sound volume.

Camera

Rear Wide Camera ➔ Guidelines

Fixed Guideline

On/**Off**

Dynamic Guideline

On/**Off**

Cross Traffic Monitor*

On/**Off**

Voice Control

Default Assist App*1

None/**Alexa**/**Google Assistant**

Default Assist App*2

None/**Alexa**

Listen for "Hey Siri"*3

On/**Off**

Google Assistant*1

Sets the functions of **Google Assistant**.

*1: Models with Google built-in
*2: Models without Google built-in
*3: Activates when the iPhone is connected.

Security

You can customize security settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen. Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

Google*1

You can customize Google settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen. Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

*1: Models with Google built-in

Advanced Settings

You can customize advanced system settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen. Specifications may be changed via system updates, etc.

*: Not available on all models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, select (Home) icon ➔ **Vehicle Settings** ➔ setting item.

List of Customizable Options

TPMS Calibration*

TPMS Calibration

Calibrate

Driver Assist System Setup

Forward Collision Warning Distance

Long/**Normal**[*1]/**Short**

Head-up Warning*

On[*1]/**Off**

Road Departure Mitigation Setting

Narrow/**Normal**[*1]/**Wide**/**Warning Only**

ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep

On/**Off**[*1]

Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep

On/**Off**[*1]

Blind Spot Information

Audible And Visual Alert[*1]/**Visual Alert**

Traffic Sign Recognition System Display Setting

On[*1]/**Off**

Traffic Sign Recognition System Speed Limit Warning

On/**Off**[*1]

Speed Limit Warning Threshold Setting

Speed Limit[*1]/**Speed Limit +3mph**/**Speed Limit +5mph**/**Speed Limit +10mph** (When mph is selected)

Speed Limit[*1]/**Speed Limit +5km/h**/**Speed Limit +10km/h**/**Speed Limit +15km/h** (When km/h is selected)

Driver Attention Monitor

Tactile And Audible Alert[*1]/**Tactile Alert**/**Off**

Rear Sensor Setting*

On[*1]/**Off**

*1: Default Setting

Meter/Head-up Display* Setup

Adjust Outside Temp. Display

-5°F ~ **±0°F**[*1] ~ **+5°F** (U.S.)

-3°C ~ **±0°C**[*1] ~ **+3°C** (Canada)

"Trip A" Reset Timing

When Fully Refueled/**IGN Off**/**Manually Reset**[*1]

*: Not available on all models

"Trip B" Reset Timing

When Fully Refueled/IGN Off/ Manually Reset[*1]

Adjust Alarm Volume

High/Mid[*1]**/Low**

Fuel Efficiency Backlight

On[*1]**/Off**

Turn by Turn Auto Display

On[*1]**/Off**

Rear Seat Reminder

On[*1]**/Off**

Speed/Distance Units

km/h·km/mph·miles[*1] (U.S.)

km/h·km[*1]**/mph·miles** (Canada)

*1: Default Setting

Driving Position Setup*

Memory Position Link

On[*1]**/Off**

Seat Position Movement At Entry/ Exit

On[*1]**/Off**

*1: Default Setting

Keyless Access Setup

Door Unlock Mode

Driver Door Only[*1]**/All Doors**

Keyless Access Light Flash

On[*1]**/Off**

Keyless Access Beep

On[*1]**/Off**

Remote Start System On/Off

On[*1]**/Off**

Lockout Prevention

On[*1]**/Off**

*1: Default Setting

Lighting Setup

Auto High-Beam

On[*1]**/Off**

Interior Light Dimming Time

60sec/30sec[*1]**/15sec**

Headlight Auto Off Timer

60sec/30sec/15sec[*1]**/0sec**

Auto Light Sensitivity*

Max/High/Mid[*1]**/Low/Min**

Auto Headlight On with Wiper On

On[*1]**/Off**

*1: Default Setting

*: Not available on all models

Door Setup

Auto Door Lock

With Vehicle Speed[*1]**/Shift From P/Off**

Auto Door Unlock

All Doors When Driver's Door Opens[*1]**/All Doors With Shift To P/All Doors When Ignition Switched Off/Off**

Walk Away Auto Lock

On/Off[*1]

Keyless Lock Answer Back

On[*1]**/Off**

Keyless Remote Power Window Control

On[*1]**/Off**

Lock Presetting

On[*1]**/Off**

*1: Default Setting

Climate Control Setup

Driver Seat automatic Climate Control

On[*1]**/Off**

Passenger Seat automatic Climate Control

On[*1]**/Off**

*1: Default Setting

INDIVIDUAL Settings

Powertrain

ECON/NORMAL[*1]**/SPORT**

Steering

NORMAL[*1]**/SPORT**

ACC

ECON/NORMAL[*1]

Gauge

NORMAL[*1]**/SPORT**

*1: Default Setting

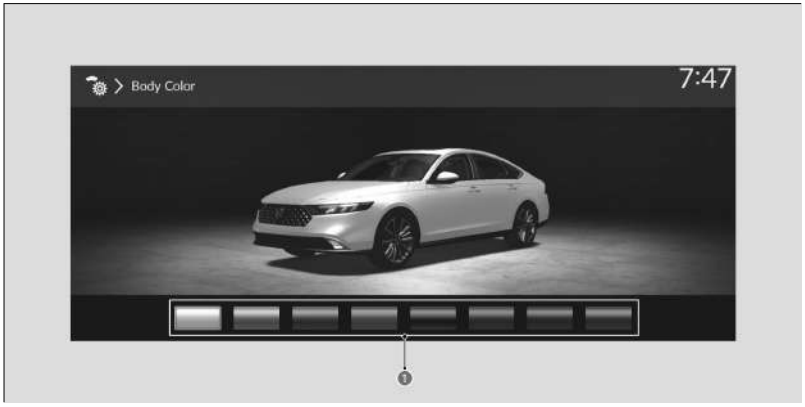
Maintenance Info.

Maintenance Info.

Select Reset Items.

Vehicle Color Settings

You can change the body color of the vehicle image on the **Vehicle Settings** screen.



1 Color

[1] Select **Menu**.
[2] Select **Body Color**.
[3] Select desired color.

How to Customize the Profile Settings

You can add and change users, as well as customize user settings.
Select (Home) icon, select **Profile Settings**, and select a setting item you want.

Change Profile

You can change and add users.
User Information ►P.185

Manage Profile

Use **Manage Profile** to change profile settings. Please confirm the details on the audio/information screen.
Specifications are subject to change via system updates, etc.

Driving Position Setting

By adjusting the seating position and then pressing the Memory 1 or Memory 2 button, you can store or recall up to 2 driving positions per user.
Driving Position Memory System* ►P.75
Refer to the following for details on how to adjust seating positions.
Adjusting the Front Seat Positions ►P.71

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings to their factory defaults.

- If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.
- If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, you cannot use the HondaLink® because it goes offline.

HondaLink® ▶P.190

> When you transfer the vehicle to a third-party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

Defaulting General Settings

Only the Owner user can execute this command.
If current profile is not the Owner user, please switch users.

Switching Users ▶P.187

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **General Settings**.
[3] Select **System**.
[4] Select **Factory Data Reset**.
» A confirmation message appears on the screen.
[5] Select **Continue**.
[6] Select **Reset** to reset the settings.
» The system will reboot.

Defaulting Vehicle Settings

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **Vehicle Settings**.
[3] Select **Menu**.
[4] Select **Default All**.
[5] Select **Yes**.

General Information on the Audio System

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

The following information was made based on the most up-to-date information at the time this manual was written. There may be some discrepancies with updated versions of the audio system.

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
Made for iPod touch (6th generation)/iPod touch (7th generation)
Made for iPhone 5s/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6s/iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone XR/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max/iPhone SE (2nd generation)/iPhone 12 mini/iPhone 12/iPhone 12 Pro/iPhone 12 Pro Max/iPhone 13 mini/iPhone 13/iPhone 13 Pro/iPhone 13 Pro Max/iPhone SE (3rd generation)/iPhone 14/iPhone 14 Plus/iPhone 14 Pro/iPhone 14 Pro Max/iPhone 15/iPhone 15 Plus/iPhone 15 Pro/iPhone 15 Pro Max

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

Compatible USB Flash Drives

Please use a recommended USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher formatted with FAT16 or FAT32.

- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, or WAV formats may be unsupported.
- Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.
- Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

Honda App License Agreement

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE CAREFULLY READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (THIS "AGREEMENT") WHICH GOVERNS YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE INSTALLED ON YOUR HONDA OR ACURA VEHICLE (YOUR "VEHICLE") AS WELL AS THE APPLICATIONS, SERVICES, FUNCTIONS, AND CONTENT PROVIDED THROUGH THE SOFTWARE (COLLECTIVELY, THE "SERVICES"). YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES WILL SERVE AS YOUR CONSENT TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. THE SOFTWARE IS OWNED (OR LICENSED), PROVIDED, AND/OR OPERATED BY AMERICAN HONDA MOTOR CO. INC., ("HONDA," "US," "WE," OR "OUR"), WITH ITS BUSINESS ADDRESS AT 1919 TORRANCE BLVD., TORRANCE, CA 90501. REFERENCE TO "HONDA" IN THIS AGREEMENT INCLUDES HONDA'S PARENT COMPANY AND ITS AFFILIATES AND DESIGNATED AGENTS. THE SERVICES ARE OWNED (OR LICENSED), PROVIDED, AND/OR OPERATED BY HONDA OR A THIRD-PARTY SERVICE PROVIDER (A "PROVIDER"). REFERENCE TO A "PROVIDER" IN THIS AGREEMENT INCLUDES SUCH PROVIDER'S PARENT COMPANY, AFFILIATES, AND DESIGNATED AGENTS.

A. Description of the Software. The SOFTWARE includes the software, firmware and the like, installed and executing on your VEHICLE during manufacture, and thereafter updated from time to time by HONDA, you or an authorized HONDA dealer (a "DEALER"). The SOFTWARE allows you to access and use a variety of SERVICES, including but not limited to: (a) HONDA applications, services, and content provided through the SOFTWARE (together, "HONDA SERVICES"); and (b) PROVIDER applications, services, and content provided through the SOFTWARE (together, "PROVIDER SERVICES"), each of which may provide access to various information, media, content, and services.

B. SOFTWARE Licensing and Intellectual Property.
1. SOFTWARE. This AGREEMENT grants you a non-exclusive, limited, and revocable license to use the SOFTWARE and SERVICES solely (a) as installed on your VEHICLE by HONDA, (b) as updated on your Vehicle by HONDA, you (but only as and when directed by HONDA), or a DEALER and (c) as permitted under the terms of this AGREEMENT.
2. HONDA Services. The SOFTWARE may provide you with access to various HONDA SERVICES. Installation, activation, or use of HONDA SERVICES may require your consent to additional terms, conditions, and privacy policies applicable to those HONDA SERVICES (the "HONDA TERMS"). You acknowledge and agree that any collection, use, sharing of data generated by your VEHICLE or your use of your VEHICLE, and your use of the HONDA SERVICES shall be subject to this AGREEMENT and any additional HONDA TERMS that may be specifically applicable to such HONDA SERVICES or data generation. The HONDA SERVICES may collect, use, and share such data while you are using the SOFTWARE.

3. Open-Source Software. The SOFTWARE and SERVICES may incorporate software licensed to HONDA under free or open-source licenses which govern HONDA's distribution and your use of such software. HONDA and the third-party authors, licensors, and distributors of such software disclaim all warranties and all liability arising from any and all use or distribution of the software. To the extent such software is provided under terms that differ from the applicable free or open-source licenses, those terms are offered by HONDA alone. Additional information regarding free and open-source software incorporated in the SOFTWARE and SERVICES is available in this manual or within the SOFTWARE.

4. Provider Services. The SOFTWARE may provide you with access to various PROVIDER SERVICES. Installation or use of such PROVIDER SERVICES may require your consent to additional terms, conditions, and privacy policies of the applicable PROVIDER (the "PROVIDER TERMS"). This AGREEMENT restricts the manner in which you can install and use PROVIDER SERVICES but does not grant you a license or permission to use such PROVIDER SERVICES. Your permission to use PROVIDER SERVICES is limited and subject to any license grants, conditions, and limitations included in the PROVIDER TERMS. You acknowledge that any collection, use, sharing of your information, targeted advertising practices by PROVIDERS, and your use of the PROVIDER SERVICES shall be subject to both this AGREEMENT and any applicable PROVIDER TERMS. The PROVIDER SERVICES may collect, use, and share such information while you are using the SOFTWARE.

5. License Limitations and Restrictions on Use.
(a) Limited License. You understand and agree that the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are licensed, not sold, to you solely for use in accordance with this AGREEMENT and any applicable PROVIDER TERMS, and any documentation for the VEHICLE made available to you by HONDA (any "DOCUMENTATION"). HONDA and its licensors reserve all rights in the SOFTWARE and HONDA SERVICES not expressly granted to you under this AGREEMENT. PROVIDERS and their licensors reserve all rights in the PROVIDER SERVICES not expressly granted to you under the applicable PROVIDER TERMS.
(b) Restrictions on Use. The licenses granted under this AGREEMENT do not permit you to use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES on a device other than your VEHICLE. As a condition of using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, you agree that you may not and will not:

(1) copy, download, distribute, modify, publish, sell, rent, lease, lend, license, sublicense, reuse, or create derivative works of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES or any of the content or other material within the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, including without limitation, HONDA or PROVIDER names, logos, or any other trademarks of HONDA or PROVIDERS or used in association with the SOFTWARE or any SERVICES, except as required to use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in accordance with this AGREEMENT, any applicable PROVIDER TERMS, and the DOCUMENTATION;

(2) access or use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in any manner intended to damage or impair the operation of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES or interfere with anyone else's use and enjoyment of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES;

(3) access or attempt to access any system or server on which the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is hosted or modify or alter the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in any way;

(4) use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES for any unlawful purpose, or in violation of any third party rights;

(5) use the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in violation of any applicable traffic regulations, rules or laws, including but not limited to any driver distraction laws, rules or regulations;

(6) violate the terms of this AGREEMENT, any HONDA TERMS, any PROVIDER TERMS or other applicable third-party terms, conditions, and privacy policies; or

(7) reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, attempt to derive the source code of, nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble, or attempt to derive the source code of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted (a) by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or (b) the terms of applicable free or opensource software licenses.

6. Intellectual Property Rights. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, the accompanying DOCUMENTATION, and all copies of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are owned by HONDA, PROVIDERS, or their suppliers or licensors. This AGREEMENT does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of HONDA, PROVIDERS, or their licensors, affiliates, or suppliers.

7. Export Restrictions: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are subject to U.S., European Union, and other export jurisdictions. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use, and destination restrictions issued by the U.S. and other governments.

C. SOFTWARE Operation

1. HONDA reserves the right to suspend or terminate your access to and use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES if you are found to be in violation of this AGREEMENT or as reasonably deemed necessary by HONDA.

2. Eligibility/Registration/Activation. The SOFTWARE is intended for and available to individuals who (a) are of legal age of majority in their jurisdiction of residence (and at least 18 years of age), or are younger than 18 years of age and possess a valid driver's license issued by their jurisdiction of residence, and (b) own or have permissive access to a compatible VEHICLE. We do not knowingly collect any information, including personal information, from children under 13. If we learn or are notified that we have collected personal information of a child under 13, we will immediately take steps to delete such information.

3. Use of PROVIDER SERVICES through the SOFTWARE. Certain PROVIDER SERVICES made available through the SOFTWARE may require that you register or otherwise have an account with the PROVIDER and agree to PROVIDER TERMS. Any use of any of such PROVIDER SERVICES within the SOFTWARE is subject to this AGREEMENT and the applicable PROVIDER TERMS. HONDA does not exercise control over such PROVIDER SERVICES and is not responsible or liable for the availability, security, or content of such PROVIDER SERVICES, and the inclusion of any PROVIDER SERVICES does not imply a referral from, the approval of, or the endorsement by HONDA of such PROVIDER SERVICES. HONDA is not responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for any damage relating to or resulting from your use of the PROVIDER SERVICES.

4. Links to Third Party Sites: The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to access third-party sites and content through the use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. The third-party sites and content are not under the control of HONDA. HONDA is not responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for such third-party websites and their content or for any damage relating to or resulting from your access or use of such websites and content.

5. Unauthorized Use and Abuse. You are responsible for ensuring your (and any authorized third parties') use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES remains in compliance with this AGREEMENT and all other applicable HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS. You acknowledge and agree that any use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES occurring through your VEHICLE will be deemed your actions and that HONDA and PROVIDERS may rely upon such actions. You agree to immediately notify us if you suspect fraudulent or abusive activity involving the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. If you so notify us or if we otherwise suspect fraudulent or abusive activity, you agree to cooperate with us in any fraud investigation and to use any fraud prevention measures we prescribe. Your failure to immediately notify us or cooperate to use such measures will result in your liability for all fraudulent usage or abusive activity associated with your VEHICLE.

6. SOFTWARE Updates. The SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be updated when your VEHICLE is serviced by a DEALER or remotely, over-the-air, by HONDA from time to time; such updates may occur with or without further notice or your future consent. The SOFTWARE may be updated at HONDA's discretion and for any purpose including, without limitation, to patch or otherwise improve the SOFTWARE or SERVICES functionality, security, or stability. All updates to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are subject to this AGREEMENT and any other applicable HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS.

7. Uninstalling, Removing, and Replacing the SOFTWARE. Replacing SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES with software or firmware not provided and installed by HONDA or a DEALER will render all representations and warranties for the SOFTWARE, HONDA SERVICES, and VEHICLE functionality reliant upon the SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES null and void.

D. SOFTWARE Operational Notices and Warnings

1. Vehicle Geolocation Information. You acknowledge that your VEHICLE may be equipped with certain traffic and map features. The traffic feature will automatically collect and transmit, through GPS technology, your Vehicle's current location (longitude and latitude), travel direction and speed ("VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION") to HONDA and PROVIDERS. The VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION is used by HONDA and PROVIDERS to provide traffic and navigation-related information to you, but may also be used to provide other SERVICES or offers to you. HONDA will not use such VEHICLE GEOLOCATION INFORMATION for its own marketing efforts, or provide such information to unaffiliated third parties for their own purposes, without your express consent.

2. Potential Map Inaccuracy and Route Safety. Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls, routing, or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following suggested routes. Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal driving maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals, or clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for such locations and routes. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions. Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Navigation features are not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by the SOFTWARE or SERVICES should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

3. Speech Recognition: You acknowledge and understand that HONDA and PROVIDERS may record, retain, and use voices commands when you use the speech recognition components of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. You and all VEHICLE operators and passengers (a) consent to the recording and retention of voice commands in support of providing speech recognition components and (b) release HONDA and PROVIDERS from all claims, liabilities, and losses that may result from any use of such recorded voice commands. Recognition errors are inherent in speech recognition. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system and address any errors. Neither HONDA nor PROVIDERS will be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process.

4. Distraction Hazards. Navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) input or setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can seriously distract your attention and could cause a crash or other serious consequences; the ability to undertake such interactions may also be limited by state or local law, which laws you are responsible to know and follow. Even occasional short scans of the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving at a critical time. Pull over and stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could result in a crash.

E. Information Collection and Storage

1. Information Collection, Use, Transmission and Storage of Data. Consent to Use of Data: You agree that HONDA and PROVIDERS may collect and use your information gathered in any manner as part of product support services related to the SOFTWARE or related services. HONDA may share such information with third parties, including, without limitation, PROVIDERS, third party software and services suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agents, solely to improve their products or to provide services or technologies to you. HONDA, third party software and systems suppliers, their affiliates and/or their designated agent may disclose this information to others, but not in a form that personally identifies you.

2. Information Storage. Depending on the type of multimedia system you have in your VEHICLE, certain information may be stored for ease of use of the SOFTWARE including, without limitation, search history, location history in certain applications, previous and saved destinations, map locations within certain applications, and device numbers and contact information.

(a) Vehicle Health Information. Your VEHICLE may remotely transmit information regarding the status and health of your VEHICLE ("VEHICLE INFORMATION") to HONDA without notification to you. VEHICLE INFORMATION may contain VEHICLE maintenance and malfunction status that is derived from VEHICLE diagnostic data and includes, but is not limited to, status of powered doors and windows, battery life data, battery charging data, VEHICLE speed, coolant temperature, air compressor revolution, output power, warning codes, diagnostic trouble codes, fuel injection volume, and engine rotations per minute. VEHICLE HEALTH INFORMATION may be used by HONDA for research and development, to deliver HONDA SERVICES and information to you, and to contact you, and is retained only for a period of time necessary to fulfill these goals.

(b) VEHICLE Geolocation Data (non-navigation/map based). If you opt-in to geolocation-based SERVICES, your vehicle's geolocation data (latitude and longitude) will be automatically sent from your VEHICLE to HONDA and PROVIDERS.

(c) You understand that the inputting or uploading of information to your VEHICLE's multimedia system or the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is at your own risk and that HONDA is not responsible for unauthorized access to or use of any personal or other information. All information uploaded to the SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be stored on your VEHICLES's multimedia system and you understand that the security and safety of your VEHICLE's multimedia system is your sole responsibility.

F. NO WARRANTY. You understand and agree that your use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES are solely at your own risk and that you will be solely responsible for any damage to your VEHICLE's multimedia system or any other equipment or any loss of data that may result from your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. THE SOFTWARE AND SERVICES ARE PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESSED, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY. WE SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. HONDA makes no warranties that the SOFTWARE or SERVICES will meet your requirements, or that the SOFTWARE or SERVICES will be uninterrupted, timely, secure, non-infringing or error free. You understand and agree that you are responsible for any and all charges, costs or expenses associated with your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. Advice or information, whether oral or written, obtained by you from us or through the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are provided for informational purposes only and will not create any warranty not expressly made herein. You should not rely on any such information or advice. We assume no liability or responsibility for any errors or omissions in the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. We do not make any warranty or representation that your use of the material displayed on, or obtained through, the SOFTWARE or SERVICES is non-infringing of any rights of any third party. Any decision or action taken by you on the basis of information or content provided via the application is at your sole discretion and risk. HONDA and PROVIDERS are not responsible or liable for any such decision, or for the accuracy, completeness, usefulness, or availability of any content or information displayed, transmitted, or otherwise made available via the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. To the extent jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion of certain warranties, some of the above exclusions may not apply to you.

G. LIMITATIONS ON LIABILITY. You and HONDA are each waiving important rights.
1. Limitations on YOUR liability. HONDA cannot recover from you any consequential, indirect, incidental, or special damages, or attorney's fees in connection with your use of the SOFTWARE or HONDA SERVICES. HONDA WAIVES TO THE FULLEST EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW ANY CLAIM FOR DAMAGES OTHER THAN DIRECT, COMPENSATORY DAMAGES AS LIMITED IN THIS AGREEMENT.

2. Limitation on HONDA and PROVIDER liability. Neither HONDA nor PROVIDERS will be liable to you or any other party for consequential, indirect, incidental, special, or punitive damages (including without limitation lost profits) in connection with your use of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, even if HONDA or PROVIDERS are aware of the possibility of such damages. These limitations apply to all claims, including, without limitation, claims in contract and tort (such as negligence, product liability and strict liability). To the extent that a jurisdiction does not permit the exclusion or limitation of liability as set forth herein our liability is limited to the maximum extent permitted by law in such states. If HONDA or PROVIDERS are found liable to you for any reason, you agree that the aggregate liability of all these parties to you for any claim is limited to ten U.S. dollars (US $10.00). Neither HONDA nor any PROVIDER would have agreed to provide the SOFTWARE or SERVICES to you if you did not agree to this limitation. This amount is the sole and exclusive liability of HONDA and PROVIDERS to you, and is payable as liquidated damages and not as a penalty. Except where prohibited by law, you may not bring any claim against HONDA or any third-party beneficiary more than two (2) years after the claim arises. We do not have any liability for SOFTWARE or SERVICES interruptions of any length.

(a) Release of HONDA and PROVIDERS For yourself and anyone else claiming under you, you agree to release and discharge HONDA, PROVIDERS, their respective officers, directors, and employees, and each third-party beneficiary from all claims, liabilities and losses in connection with the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, including, but not limited to claims for personal injury or property damage arising from the total or partial failure of performance of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES, even if caused by or based upon the negligence, gross negligence, strict products liability, Deceptive Trade Practices Act violations, bad faith, or breach of warranty of us or the malfunction of the SOFTWARE or SOFTWARE SERVICES. YOU AGREE TO WAIVE TO THE FULLEST EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, ANY CLAIM FOR DAMAGES OTHER THAN DIRECT, COMPENSATORY DAMAGES AS LIMITED IN THIS AGREEMENT. YOU HEREBY RELEASE AND DISCHARGE HONDA AND ITS LICENSORS AND CONTRACTORS (INCLUDING ANY THIRD PARTIES PROVIDING ALL OR PART OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES) FROM AND AGAINST ANY CLAIMS, DAMAGES, EXPENSES AND LIABILITY ARISING FROM OR RELATED TO ANY INJURIES, DAMAGES, OR LOSSES TO ANY PERSON (INCLUDING DEATH) OR PROPERTY OF ANY KIND RESULTING IN WHOLE OR PART, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, FROM YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE OR SERVICES.

H. Survival. You agree that the limitations of liability and indemnities in this AGREEMENT will survive even after the AGREEMENT has ended. These limitations of liability apply not only to you, but to anyone using the SOFTWARE or SERVICES via your VEHICLE, to anyone making a claim on your behalf, and to any claims made by your family, employees, customers, or others arising out of or relating to your VEHICLE, the SOFTWARE, or SERVICES.

I. Availability/Interruption. The SOFTWARE and certain SERVICES are made available through your VEHICLE's compatible multimedia system when the VEHICLE is turned on. Certain SERVICES may be available only through your compatible mobile device when it is within the operating range of the VEHICLE and a wireless carrier. The availability of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES may be subject to transmission limitation or interruption, including but not limited to technical obsolesce or sunsetting of the hardware, software or firmware, inside of or external to the Vehicle, required for data transmission or receipt. HONDA does not guarantee that the SOFTWARE, SERVICES, or any portion thereof will be available at all times or in all areas. You acknowledge and agree that HONDA is not responsible for performance degradation, interruption or delays. You acknowledge that HONDA shall not be liable to you if the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in a given location are not available. If the SOFTWARE or SERVICES are not available within your intended location, you agree that your sole remedy shall be to cease using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES.

J. PRODUCT SUPPORT: Product support for the SOFTWARE is provided by HONDA. For product support, please refer to HONDA instructions provided in the DOCUMENTATION. Should you have any questions concerning this AGREEMENT, or if you desire to contact HONDA for any other reason, please refer to the HONDA contact information provided in the DOCUMENTATION.

K. Termination and Transfer.
1. Termination. This AGREEMENT is effective until terminated by you or US. WE may terminate this AGREEMENT for any or no reason, and with or without notice to you. Your rights under this AGREEMENT will terminate automatically without notice from US if you fail to comply with any term of this AGREEMENT. Upon termination of this AGREEMENT, you shall cease all use of the SOFTWARE and SERVICES.

2. Transfer: You may permanently transfer your rights under this AGREEMENT only as part of a sale or transfer of the VEHICLE, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE and HONDA SERVICES (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, and any upgrades), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this AGREEMENT. You agree to notify HONDA upon the sale or transfer of the VEHICLE. To contact HONDA, please refer to the HONDA contact information provided in the DOCUMENTATION.

L. Changes to the SOFTWARE or SERVICES. WE may change, modify, or update the SOFTWARE or SERVICES from time to time. Unless explicitly stated otherwise, any new features or services that augment or enhance the SOFTWARE or SERVICES in the future shall respectively be considered part of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES and subject to this AGREEMENT. WE reserve the right at any time and from time to time to interrupt, restrict, modify, suspend, discontinue, temporarily or permanently, the SOFTWARE or SERVICES (or any portion thereof), with or without notice to you, and you agree that HONDA shall not be liable to you or to any third party for any modification, suspension or discontinuance of the SOFTWARE or SERVICES.

M. ARBITRATION:

PLEASE READ THIS ARBITRATION PROVISION CAREFULLY TO UNDERSTAND YOUR RIGHTS. YOU AGREE THAT ANY CLAIM THAT YOU MAY HAVE IN THE FUTURE MUST BE RESOLVED THROUGH BINDING ARBITRATION. YOU WAIVE THE RIGHT TO HAVE YOUR DISPUTE HEARD IN COURT AND WAIVE THE RIGHT TO BRING CLASS CLAIMS. YOU UNDERSTAND THAT DISCOVERY AND APPEAL RIGHTS ARE MORE LIMITED IN ARBITRATION.

Arbitration is a method of resolving a claim, dispute or controversy without filing a lawsuit. By agreeing to arbitrate, the right to go to court is waived and instead claims, disputes or controversies are submitted to binding arbitration. This provision sets forth the terms and conditions of our agreement. YOU and HONDA agree and acknowledge that this Agreement affects interstate commerce and the Federal Arbitration Act ("FAA") applies. By using the Software, Vehicle, or Services, YOU elect to have disputes resolved by arbitration.
YOU, HONDA or any involved third party may pursue a Claim. "Claim" means any dispute between YOU, HONDA, or any involved third party relating to your use of the Software, the Vehicle, or the Services, this Agreement, or our relationship, including any representations, omissions or warranties. "Claim" does not include personal injury or wrongful death claims. YOU or HONDA may seek remedies in small claims court or provisional judicial remedies without arbitrating. In addition, notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, YOU or HONDA may seek equitable relief in a court of competent jurisdiction.

YOU or HONDA may select arbitration with American Arbitration Association, JAMS or National Arbitration and Mediation. Contact these sponsors for their rules. The hearing will be in the federal district where YOU reside. If agreed, it may be by telephone or written submissions. Filing and arbitrator fees to be paid per the sponsor rules. You may contact the sponsor for a fee waiver. If no fee waivers, HONDA will pay filing and arbitrator fees up to $5,000, unless law requires more. Each party is responsible for other fees. Arbitrator may award costs or fees to prevailing party, if permitted by law. HONDA will not seek fees, unless the claims are frivolous.

Arbitrator shall be an attorney or current or retired judge familiar with automotive or consumer software. The arbitrator shall follow substantive law, statute of limitations and decide all issues relating to the interpretation, construction, enforceability and applicability of this provision. The arbitrator may order relief permitted by law. This provision is governed and enforceable by the FAA. An award shall include a written opinion and be final, subject to appeal by the FAA.

This provision survives termination of this Agreement or relationship, bankruptcy, assignment or transfer. If part of this provision is unenforceable, the remainder remains in effect. If unenforceability allows arbitration as a class action, then this provision is entirely unenforceable. You may opt out within 30 days of your initial use of the Software by sending a signed, written notice to HONDA at American Honda Motor Co., Inc. Honda Automobile Customer Service Mail Stop CHI-5, 1919 Torrance Blvd. Torrance, CA 90501-2746. HONDA reserves the right to make changes to this provision after providing written notice and an opportunity to opt out.

N. Miscellaneous: You may not assign this AGREEMENT without HONDA's prior written consent. This AGREEMENT and any additional HONDA TERMS and PROVIDER TERMS represents the entire agreement between you and US. HONDA may amend the terms of this AGREEMENT by providing you with notices of such updated terms. If you do not consent to be bound by the updated terms, your sole remedy will be to cease using the SOFTWARE and SERVICES. If any part of this AGREEMENT is found invalid, void, or unenforceable, the balance of the AGREEMENT will remain valid and enforceable according to its terms. To the fullest extent permitted by law, and except as explicitly provided otherwise, this AGREEMENT and any disputes arising out of or relating to it will be governed by the laws of the State of California, except that California laws concerning choice of law or conflicts shall not apply if they would cause the substantive law of another jurisdiction to apply. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Section M shall be governed by the Federal Arbitration Act and the laws of the State of California, as applicable, as set forth therein. The failure to enforce any term of this AGREEMENT on one occasion shall not prevent enforcement on any other occasion or the enforcement of any other term. Headings and captions shall not be considered included for purposes of interpretation or application hereof, but are for convenience only.

About Open Source Licenses

To see the open source license information, follow these steps.

[1] Select (Home) icon.
[2] Select **General Settings**.
[3] Select **Advanced Settings**.
[4] Select **System**.
[5] Select **Legal Information**.
[6] Select **Third-party licenses**.

License Information

Bluetooth®

The *Bluetooth®* word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by ALPS ALPINE CO., LTD. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
https://www.bluetooth.com/develop-with-bluetooth/marketing-branding/

Windows Media

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

Apple

“Made for iPod,” and “Made for iPhone,” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.
Apple, the Apple Logo, iPhone, iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Apple CarPlay, iPod, iPhone, iTunes, Siri and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

MPEG

Mpeg4 Visual
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUALA STANDARD (“MPEG-4 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC.
SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

AVC/H.264
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

HD Radio™

HD Radio™ Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation, a subsidiary of Xperi Inc., U.S. and Foreign Patents. For patents see *https://xperi.com/hd-radio-patents/*. Xperi, HD Radio, HD, and 'ARC' logos and their respective logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Xperi Inc. and its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE," WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA'S TOTAL LIABILITY TO YOU FOR ALL DAMAGES (OTHER THAN AS MAY BE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW IN CASES INVOLVING PERSONAL INJURY) EXCEED THE AMOUNT OF FIVE DOLLARS ($5.00). THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

Safety Driving Assist System

Honda Sensing®

About Honda Sensing® ····· 231
Device for Operating Each Function and Gauge Content ····· 232
Front Sensor Camera ····· 233
Radar Sensor ····· 235
Sonar Sensors* ····· 236

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

About Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) ····· 238
System Operation ····· 238
Operating Conditions ····· 239
System On and Off ····· 240
System Limitations ····· 241

Low Speed Braking Control*

About Low Speed Braking Control ····· 244
System Operation ····· 244
System On and Off ····· 246
System Limitations ····· 246

Road Departure Mitigation System

About Road Departure Mitigation System ····· 248
System Operation ····· 248
Operating Conditions ····· 249
System On and Off ····· 249
System Limitations ····· 249

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

About Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ····· 252
How to Activate the System ····· 253
To Switch the Cruise Mode ····· 258
System Limitations ····· 260

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ····· 263
Operating Conditions ····· 264
How to Activate the System ····· 264
System Limitations ····· 265

Traffic Jam Assist

About Traffic Jam Assist ····· 267
Operating Conditions ····· 268
How to Activate the System ····· 268
System Limitations ····· 269

Traffic Sign Recognition System

About Traffic Sign Recognition System ····· 271
System Operation ····· 271
System Limitations ····· 272

Blind Spot Information System

About Blind Spot Information System ····· 275
System Operation ····· 275
System On and Off ····· 276
System Limitations ····· 276

Cross Traffic Monitor

About Cross Traffic Monitor ····· 278
System Operation ····· 278
About Screen Display ····· 279
System On and Off ····· 279
System Limitations ····· 279

Parking Sensor System*

About Parking Sensor System ····· 281
The Sensor Location and Range ····· 281
System On and Off ····· 281
Operations When an Obstacle Has Been Detected ····· 282
System Limitations ····· 283

*: Not available on all models

Honda Sensing®

About Honda Sensing®

Assists with functions such as acceleration, braking, and steering in order to reduce the burden on the driver, as well as help avoid or reduce the severity of collisions.
Honda Sensing® has the following functions:

About Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) ▶P.238
About Low Speed Braking Control ▶P.244
About Road Departure Mitigation System ▶P.248
About Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ▶P.252
About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ▶P.263
About Traffic Jam Assist ▶P.267
About Traffic Sign Recognition System ▶P.271
Auto High-Beam ▶P.123
About Blind Spot Information System ▶P.275
About Cross Traffic Monitor ▶P.278
About Parking Sensor System ▶P.281
Driver Attention Monitor ▶P.300

⚠ WARNING

Only use Honda Sensing® as a driving assistance system.
Honda Sensing® is not an autonomous driving system. This is only a system to assist the driver.
There are limits to the recognition and control capabilities of each of its functions.
Overreliance on the system may lead to accidents such as collisions, which may result in death or serious injury. Always check your surroundings and drive safely by maintaining a sufficient following distance.

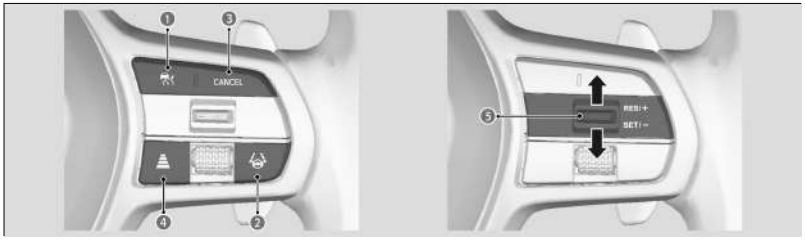
If you set the power mode to ON while the vehicle is moving, such as when on a turntable in a parking lot, some functions may not work.

To ensure proper operation of the system, observe the following:

- All the tires are of the same specified size, type, and brand, and that they are evenly worn.
- Do not modify the suspension.

Device for Operating Each Function and Gauge Content

Operating Device



❶ ACC with Low Speed Follow Button

Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow. Or, press to cancel the system.

❷ LKAS Button

Press to activate standby mode for LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist. Or, press to cancel these systems.

❸ CANCEL Button

Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow.

❹ Interval Button

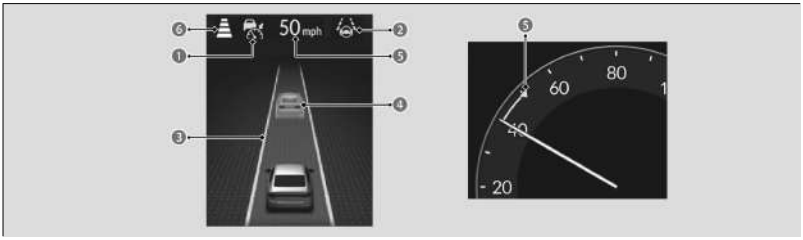
Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

❺ RES/+/SET/– Switch

Press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up to set or resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow or increase the vehicle speed. Press the **RES/+/ SET/–** switch down to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow or decrease the vehicle speed.

Gauge Content

You can see the current state of each function.



❶ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to be activated.

- Green, White/Green: The system is on.
  » White/Green indicates that a vehicle is not detected ahead.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

❷ Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist is ready to be activated.

- Green: The system is operating.
- White: The system is standby.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

❸ Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.

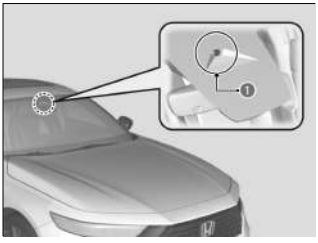
- Green lines: The system is operating.
- White lines: Traffic lane lines are detected.
- Amber line: Lane departure is detected.

❹ Indicates whether or not a vehicle is detected ahead.

- Control target vehicle: White and outlined in green.
- Outside of control target vehicle: Gray.

❺ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle speed.
❻ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow shows the set vehicle interval.

Front Sensor Camera



This camera (❶) is located behind the rearview mirror.

Handling of the Camera

- Avoid high interior temperatures to prevent the camera's sensing system from shutting off.
  - 》 It is recommended to find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking.
- To avoid concentrating heat on the camera, do not cover the camera when using a reflective sun shade.
- Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the hood, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
- Do not scratch, nick, or cause any other damage to the windshield.
  - 》 Damage within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally.
  - 》 If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield.
  - 》 After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.
  - 》 Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.
- Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel.
  - 》 It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.
- Do not install anything on the hood or front grille that obstructs the camera's view.

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high** message appears:

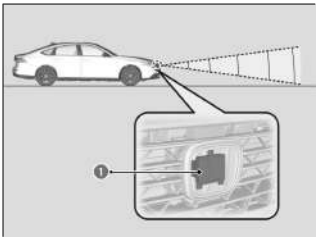
- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the airflow directed toward the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windshield temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Clean front windshield or poor viewing condition.** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windshield is clean. Clean the windshield if it is dirty.
- It may also appear in bad weather such as rain, fog, or snow, or when camera visibility is poor such as at night, in a tunnel, at dawn, or at dusk when the ambient conditions are dark.

> ! If the message does not disappear after the vehicle has been driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Radar Sensor



The radar sensor (1) is in the front grille.

Handling of the Radar Sensor

- Always keep the front grille clean.
- Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the front grille. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.
- Do not put any stickers or paint on the front grille.
- Do not scratch or damage the front grille.
- Do not replace the front grille or bumper.
- Do not remove or disassemble the radar sensor.

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Clean area shown** message appears:

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place and remove the obstacle on the area around the radar sensor with a soft cloth. The systems will resume once the obstacle has been removed, but depending on the situation, it may take time for them to do so.
- The message may come on temporarily if the radar sensor cannot detect any objects when passing through an enclosed space such as a tunnel, or driving on an open road without any structures nearby. It will disappear after driving for a while.

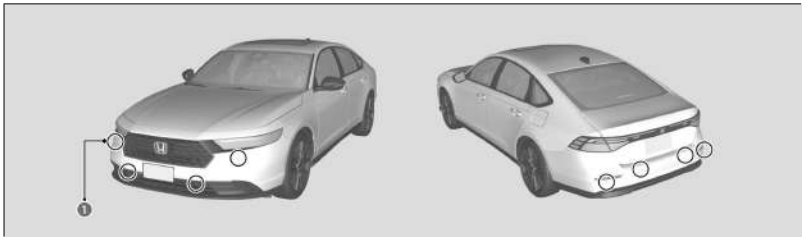
If the vehicle is involved in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if:

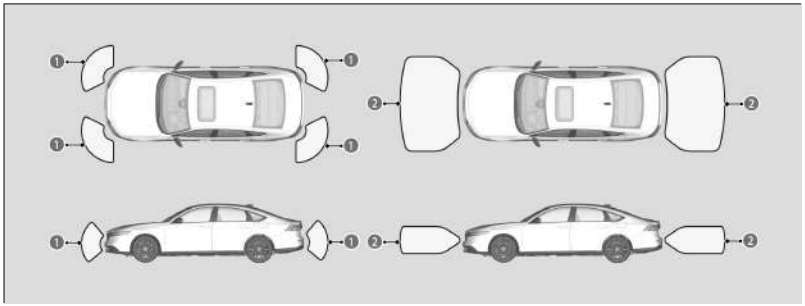
- Your vehicle is involved in a frontal collision.
- Your vehicle drives through deep water or is submerged in deep water.
- The area around the sensors strongly strikes a bump, curb, chock, slope, or embankment that could jar the radar sensor.

If the message does not disappear after the vehicle has been driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Sonar Sensors*

The sonar sensors (1) are situated in the front and rear bumper.





1 Corner Sensor Range 2 Center Sensor Range

Handling of the Sonar Sensors

For the sonar sensors to work properly, do not:

- Hit the area around the sensors.
- Place stickers or other objects on or around the sensors.
- Attempt to take apart any sensor.
- Put any accessories on or around the sensors.

If the **Low speed braking control problem. Parking sensor obstructed.** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the sonar sensors or around the sensors is clean.

> ! If the message does not disappear after the vehicle has been driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*: Not available on all models

If the vehicle is involved in any of the following situations, the sonar sensors may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- A sensor has been subjected to shock.
- Work needs to be done to the area around a sensor.
- The front or rear bumper has made contact with a hill, parking block, curb, embankment, etc.
- The vehicle has been involved in frontal or rear collision.
- The vehicle has been driven through a deep puddle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

About Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™)

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS™ is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS™ is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

> ! When performing vehicle maintenance or inspection using a chassis dynamometer or free roller, turn off the CMBS™.

> ! Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

System Operation

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 3 mph (5 km/h) or above and will search for a vehicle (including motorcycles), pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you. CMBS™ operates when the system determines there is a possibility of a collision.

Front Sensor Camera ►P.233

Radar Sensor ►P.235

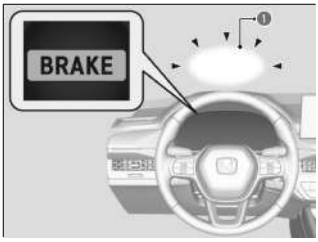
The system has three alert stages for a possible collision.

» Depending on circumstances, the CMBS™ may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

<Stage one> Situations where there is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you

The visual alert flashes. If the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you continues to decrease, the audible alert sounds in addition to the visual alert flashing.

<Stage two> Situations where risk of a collision has increased and time to respond is reduced
Visual and audible alerts come on and the brakes are lightly applied.
<Stage three> Situations where it is difficult to avoid a collision
Visual and audible alerts come on and the brakes are forcefully applied.



The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

» Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.).

1 Visual Alerts of Head-up Display*

- When the CMBS™ applies the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.
- After CMBS™ is activated and your vehicle stops or decelerates, CMBS™ will be deactivated based on the system's judgment.
- The CMBS™ may be canceled when you operate the steering wheel, brake, or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.
- When the CMBS™ is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be canceled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.

You can change the distance (**Long**/**Normal**/**Short**) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on. When in **Long**, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Short**, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.

Customized Features ▶P.202

Operating Conditions

The conditions and targets of operation for CMBS™ are as follows:

When going straight

When your vehicle speed is about 3 mph (5 km/h) or more, and the speed difference with the target is about 3 mph (5 km/h) or more:

- The vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead of you

When your vehicle speed is about 3-62 mph (5-100 km/h), and the speed difference with the target is about 3 mph (5 km/h) or more:

- Stopped vehicle (including motorcycle)
- Oncoming vehicle

*: Not available on all models

- Pedestrian
- Moving bicycle

When turning left or right (only when there is a risk of a head-on collision)

When your vehicle speed is about 3-18 mph (5-30 km/h), and the speed difference with the target is about 3 mph (5 km/h) or more:

- Oncoming vehicle*1

*1: Activates only when turning into the oncoming lane.

The system is also designed to detect pedestrians. However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions. Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

System Limitations ▶P.241

Automatic Shut Off

The CMBS™ may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) comes on and stays on when:

- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The radar sensor temperature gets too high.
- The front of the camera or the area around the radar sensor is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected (incorrect tire size, flat tire, etc.).
- You are driving near an object or place that generates strong radio waves or oise, such as a TV tower, broadcast station, power plant, or a vehicle equipped ith radar.

Once the conditions that caused the CMBS™ to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

Switching the Display ▶P.297

Safety Support ▶P.302

- Even if the system is turned off, it will automatically turn on every time the power mode is turned on.
- You cannot turn the CMBS™ off while driving.

System Limitations

In the following situations, the system may be unable to correctly identify detectable targets or road conditions, potentially causing the CMBS™ to operate improperly.

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between detectable targets and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto a detectable target or roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, detectable targets may not be illuminated).
- When nearby radio wave emitting devices such as other automotive radar sensors.

Roadway conditions

- On snowy or wet roads with blurred lanes, tire tracks, light reflections, water spray, high contrast, etc.
- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- Driving through an area where there are objects that strongly reflect radio waves onto vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles.

Vehicle conditions

- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The area around the radar sensor is obstructed by dirt, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Camera vision is blocked by drops of water from the window washer, or by the wiper blades.
- There is residue on the windshield from the windshield wipers.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy load in the trunk or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.

- Operation of the vehicle is unstable due to a slippery road, etc.
- Tire chains* are installed.

Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the radar and camera due to the condition of detectable targets

- The detectable target suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- When the detectable target blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognizing them.
- The distance between your vehicle and the detectable target is too short.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways or facing diagonally.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- The bicycle is stopped.
- When several bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When several pedestrians are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or when they are running.
- When a pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by a carried object.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 3.3 feet (1 meter) or taller than about 6.6 feet (2 meters) in height.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.

Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

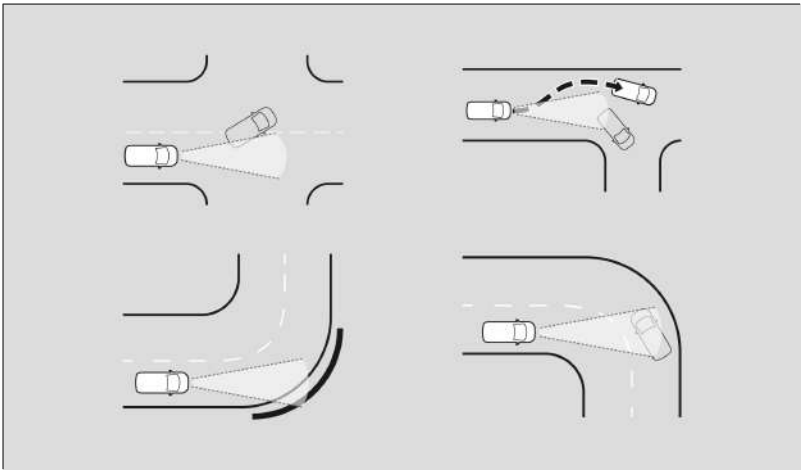
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, or other specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as trucks that are not carrying a cargo, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the detectable target is not in front of the vehicle.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the detectable target is significantly large.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the detectable target is too small and the distance between your vehicle and them is too short.
- When a vehicle (including motorcycles) or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the detectable target while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning left at an intersection, etc.)*1
- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tires, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the system cannot correctly identify the shape of the detectable target.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle that is ahead of you is extremely high.

*: Not available on all models

*1: When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning left, the CMBS™ is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

With little chance of a collision

Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS™ may activate in the following situations when the system determines that there is a possibility of collision.



- When your vehicle approaches a vehicle ahead that is turning left or right.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.
- When there are detectable targets or any structures around the curved road.
- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is left in front of you.
- When your vehicle approaches a detectable target.
- When detectable targets are passing in front of you.
- When you drive under a low structure or through a narrow gate at high speed.
- When you drive over roads with bumps, train tracks, or construction steel plates.
- When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.
- Roadway objects or structures such as guard rails, poles, trees, parked vehicles, buildings, walls, etc., or road markings and road lines are misinterpreted as detectable targets.

Low Speed Braking Control*

About Low Speed Braking Control

The Low Speed Braking Control system has assistive braking and assistive driving power suppression features. If the sonar sensors detect an obstacle such as a wall, and the system determines that there is a risk of collision, then the system suppresses torque and/or applies the brakes, helping to avoid or reduce the severity of a collision.

Sonar Sensors* ►P.236

- If the system activates in a situation where you do not want automatic brake application (such as when the vehicle is between two railroad crossing gates), simply press the brake pedal to deactivate the system and then continue to drive as intended.
- In order to prevent the system from activating when not needed, always turn it off during vehicle maintenance; when loading on ships, trucks, and so on; when using a chassis dynamometer or free rollers for inspection; or when washing the car in conveyor type car wash machine.
- After Low Speed Braking Control has activated once, it will not operate again even if you approach the same obstacle. The vehicle must be driven a certain distance before the system can be activated again.
- The system operates separately when moving forward and when reversing. (For example, if it activates when moving forward, it can be activated again immediately if reversing.)
- If the assistive braking is activated, the vehicle must be driven a certain distance before the assistive driving power suppression can be reactivated.

⚠ WARNING

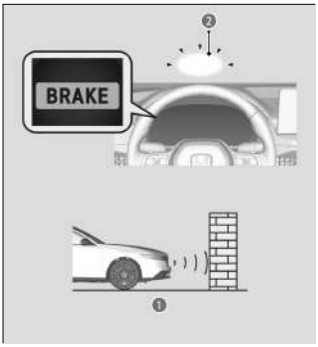
The Low Speed Braking Control System cannot avoid all collisions and may not reduce damage in each situation. Overreliance on the system may result in a collision with serious injury or death. Always check your surroundings, your shift position, and your pedal use. Driver remains responsible for safely operating the vehicle.

System Operation

Assistive Braking

Assistive braking provides a visual and audible alert when the vehicle is moving between approximately 1 and 6 mph (2 and 10 km/h) and there is the possibility of a collision with a detected wall or other obstacles, as well as providing assistance with braking.

*: Not available on all models



❶ **The vehicle applies brake**

» Depress brake pedal as soon as the system activates.

❷ **Head-up Warning Lights***

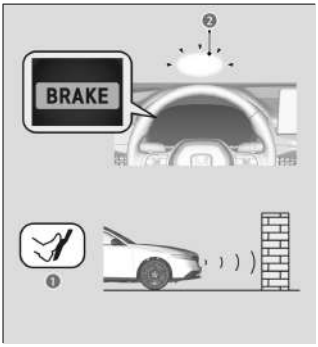
The vehicle will release the brake and start moving a few seconds after the system is activated. To keep the vehicle stopped, keep the brake pedal depressed or put the transmission into **P**.

You can turn off the rear parking sensors to disable activation of the assistive braking when reversing.

Customized Features ▶P.202

Assistive Driving Power Suppression

When the vehicle is stopped or moving at less than 6 mph (10 km/h) and there is an obstacle such as a wall near the front or back of the vehicle, if the accelerator pedal is depressed more than necessary, the system will inform you with a visual and audible alert. At the same time, the system will prevent sudden forward or backwards movement by limiting the output, then assistive driving power suppression will activate when you get closer to the obstacle.



❶ **Accidental depression of the accelerator/ Limiting the output of the power system**

❷ **Head-up Warning Lights***

Assistive driving power suppression will not activate in the following situations:

*: Not available on all models

- When moving forward: When on a steep slope or the shift position is in P, R, or N.
- When reversing: When on a steep slope or the shift position is in a position other than R.

The system will be canceled under any of the following conditions:

- When the accelerator is no longer depressed.
- When the accelerator is depressed for approximately four seconds.
- When the brake pedal is depressed.

You can turn off the rear parking sensors to disable activation of the assistive driving power suppression when reversing.

Customized Features ▶P.202

System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

Switching the Display ▶P.297

Safety Support ▶P.302

- Even if the system is turned off, it will automatically turn on every time the power mode is turned on.

System Limitations

The system may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

Examples of obstacles the sonar sensor cannot detect

- Obstacles that do not reflect sound waves well, such as people, snow, cloth, sponges, etc.
- Thin obstacles such as fences, bicycles, sign posts, etc.
- Short or small obstacles.
- Obstacles immediately in front of the bumper.
- Moving objects or obstacles that suddenly enter the road.
- Obstacles that are not perpendicular to the ground.

Examples of situations where the sonar sensors cannot detect obstacles

- The sonar sensors are dirty (covered by snow, water, mud, etc.).
- The vehicle is too hot or cold.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply when approaching the obstacle at an angle.

Examples of other cases where the system may not work correctly

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy load in the trunk or rear seats.
- Bad weather conditions such as heavy rain, fog, snow, sandstorms, etc.

- The ambient temperature/humidity is too high or low.
- When going down a very steep slope.
- When driving off-road such as on dirt, grass, or rocks.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

Situations where the system may activate even without risk of a collision

- When passing through short or narrow gates.
- When driving on uneven surfaces, grassy areas, or places with steps.
- When a sloped pillar or wall is protruding from a high position.
- When there are obstacles next to the road.
- When driving toward flags, curtains, tree branches, railroad crossing bars, etc.
- When driving on flooded roads.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

If you put any accessories (such as a bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the Low Speed Braking Control System may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.

Customized Features ▶P.202

Road Departure Mitigation System

About Road Departure Mitigation System

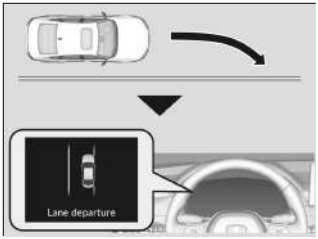
Alerts and helps assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or a detected oncoming vehicle.

Front Sensor Camera ▶P.233

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations. Overreliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

System Operation



The camera monitors left and right lane markings in white (or yellow), the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel road shoulder), or a detected oncoming vehicle. If your vehicle approaches any detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel), or a detected oncoming vehicle when the turn signals have not been engaged, the system activates.

» If the system cannot detect lane markings (in white or yellow), no assistance will be provided to avoid approaching oncoming vehicles.

In addition to a visual alert, the system assists with steering and alerts you with rapid steering wheel vibrations to help you remain within the detected lane.
The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or an oncoming vehicle.
If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you.

- The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) comes and stays on.
- There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle or road surface conditions.
- The Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane, or driven in a narrow lane.

If Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) or Traffic Jam Assist is off, the message may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder) or oncoming vehicle.

Operating Conditions

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system determines that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking, or steering.
- The vehicle is traveling between about 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).

You can set the timing for Road Departure Mitigation system activation.
Customized Features ▶P.202

System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.
Switching the Display ▶P.297
Safety Support ▶P.302

- When you turn off the system, it will remain off until you turn it back on.

System Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings (in white or yellow), the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel road shoulder), or an oncoming vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- The outer edge of the road is bordered by objects, materials, etc. other than grass or gravel.

Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through an exit or an intersection.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognized correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

Vehicle conditions

- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- There is residue on the windshield from the windshield wipers.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy load in the trunk or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.

- Tire chains* are installed.

Examples of limitations on detection due to the condition of oncoming vehicles

- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- The oncoming vehicle jumps out in front of you.
- When the oncoming vehicle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognizing it.
- The headlights of an oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- The distance between your vehicle and the oncoming vehicle is too short.
- Part of the oncoming vehicle is not visible due to the vehicle ahead of you.
- There are multiple oncoming lanes or turning lanes.
- The vehicle in the adjacent lane is parked or moving at an extremely slow speed.
- When the oncoming vehicle is specially-shaped.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the oncoming vehicle.

With little chance of a collision

The Road Departure Mitigation system may activate in the below conditions.

- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

*: Not available on all models

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

About Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Front Sensor Camera ▶P.233

Radar Sensor ▶P.235

Important Reminder

As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.
Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on expressways or freeways and in good road and weather conditions.

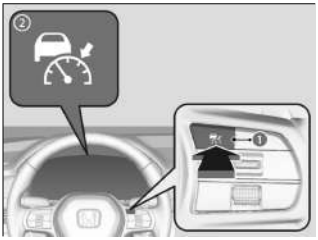
ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.
Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control. A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.
Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

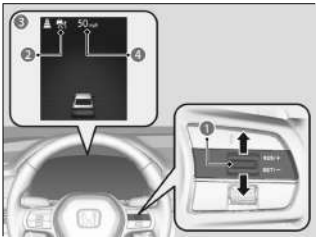
- On roads with frequent lane change or continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with undulating slopes.
- On roads with steep uphill or steep downhill slopes.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces.

How to Activate the System



[1] Press the button (❶) while the shift position is in **D**.

» The indicator (white) (❷) comes on.



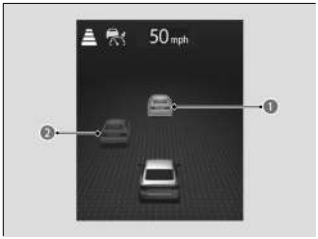
[2] Press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch (❶) up or down.

» The system will start operating at the set speed.

» The icons and set speed will be displayed on the gauge.

❷ Indicator (Green, White/Green)
❸ On when ACC with Low Speed Follow begins
❹ Set Vehicle Speed (White)

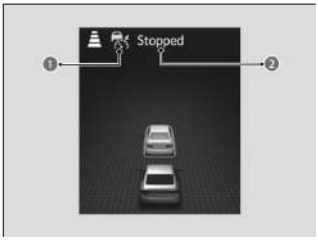
- ACC with Low Speed Follow does not operate while the brake pedal is depressed.
- When driving at 25 mph (40 km/h) or less, the vehicle speed is set to 25 mph (40 km/h). If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.
- When you use ACC with Low Speed Follow, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated. By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.
- When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow, press the button to turn off the system.



If a vehicle ahead enters the detectable range, icon (❶) appears, and the system adjusts your vehicle's speed within the set range in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval.

❶ Control target vehicle
❷ Outside of control target vehicle

If there is no vehicle ahead, your vehicle maintains the set speed. If a vehicle ahead leaves due to actions such as changing lanes, the system will slowly accelerate to the set speed and then maintain it.



❶ Indicator (Green)

Your vehicle also stops automatically. The message (❷) appears on the gauge.
When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, if you press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up or down, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow operates again within the previously set speed.

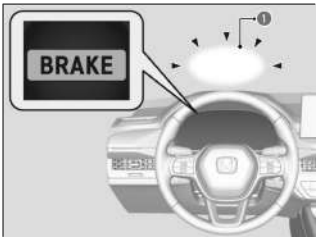
» When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the interval setting.

❶ Indicator (White/Green)

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

- When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the system, your vehicle starts to slow down.

- Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:
  - 》 The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
  - 》 A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.
- While driving down steep hills, ACC with Low Speed Follow brakes to inhibit excessive acceleration for maintaining the set speed. However, the vehicle speed may become faster than the set speed.
- When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC with Low Speed Follow may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.
- When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.
- ACC with Low Speed Follow may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g., curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g., operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).
- While ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation, if the deceleration paddle selector is used, then ACC with Low Speed Follow will be canceled.



If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision.

- 》 Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.

1 Visual Alerts of Head-up Display*

- You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range.

Customized Features ▶P.202

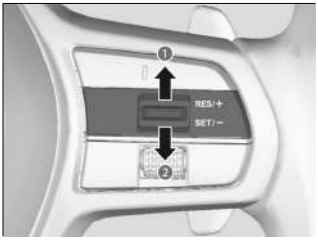
You can switch the displayed set speed measurements between mph and km/h.

Speed/distance units ▶P.304

Customized Features ▶P.202

*: Not available on all models

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed



❶ Pressing the RES/+/SET/– switch up

» Each press increases speed by about 1 mph or 1 km/h.

» Press and hold to increase speed by about 5 mph or 5 km/h.

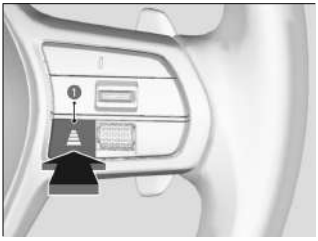
❷ Pressing the RES/+/SET/– switch down

» Each press decreases speed by about 1 mph or 1 km/h.

» Press and hold to decrease speed by about 5 mph or 5 km/h.

- If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.
- When you depress the accelerator pedal and then press down and release the **RES/+/SET/–** switch, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

To Set or Change Following-Interval

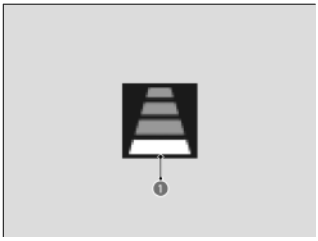


Press the button (❶) to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval.

» Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through furthest, far, mid, and nearest following-intervals.

» Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

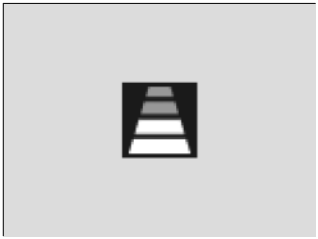
» The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the nearest, mid, far, or furthest following-interval becomes.



❶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator

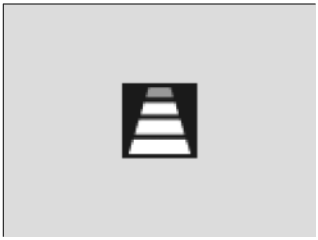
The distance between vehicles is:

- About 82 feet (25 m), 1.1 sec (vehicle speed is 50 mph [80 km/h])
- About 102 feet (31 m), 1.1 sec (vehicle speed is 65 mph [104 km/h])



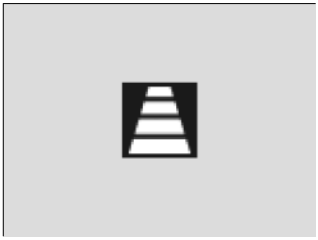
The distance between vehicles is:

- About 112 feet (34 m), 1.5 sec (vehicle speed is 50 mph [80 km/h])
- About 142 feet (43 m), 1.5 sec (vehicle speed is 65 mph [104 km/h])



The distance between vehicles is:

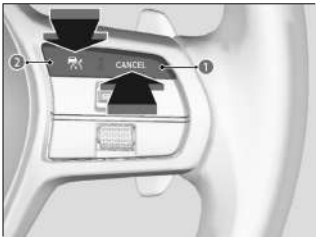
- About 154 feet (47 m), 2.1 sec (vehicle speed is 50 mph [80 km/h])
- About 200 feet (61 m), 2.1 sec (vehicle speed is 65 mph [104 km/h])



The distance between vehicles is:

- About 208 feet (64 m), 2.9 sec (vehicle speed is 50 mph [80 km/h])
- About 274 feet (83 m), 2.9 sec (vehicle speed is 65 mph [104 km/h])

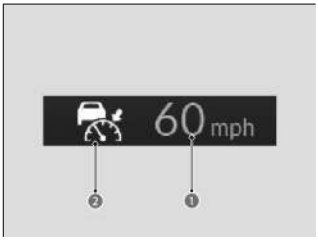
To Cancel



Any of the following operations will cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to be canceled.

- Press the **CANCEL** button (❶) or depress the brake pedal.
  » The indicator changes from green or white/green to white.
- Press the button (❷).
  » indicator goes off.

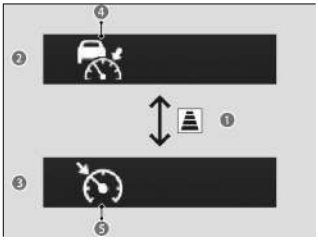
Resuming the prior set speed



❷ Indicator (White)

When you turn off ACC with Low Speed Follow by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed (❶) is displayed on the gauge in gray.
You can activate ACC with Low Speed Follow with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in gray) by pressing the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up.

To Switch the Cruise Mode



❷ Display for ACC with Low Speed Follow
❸ Display for Cruise Mode

Press and hold the button (❶) for one second.

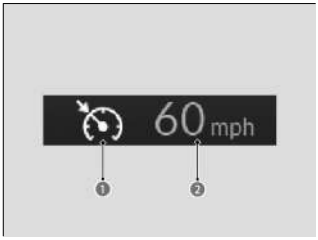
» The indicator (white) (❹) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white) (❺) and switches to the cruise mode.

To switch back to ACC with Low Speed Follow, press and hold the button again for one second.

While setting the vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow or Cruise mode, you cannot switch between the two.

> **Always be aware which mode you are in.**
> When you are driving in Cruise mode, the system will not assist you to maintain a following-interval from a vehicle ahead of you.

How to Activate Cruise Mode



When driving at 25 mph (40 km/h) or above, press the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up or down.

» The system will start operating at the set speed.

» The icons and set speed will be displayed on the gauge.

❶ Indicator (Green)
❷ Set Vehicle Speed (White)

- When you use cruise mode, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated. By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.
- While cruise mode is in operation, if the deceleration paddle selector is used, then cruise mode will be canceled.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

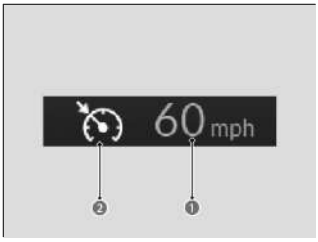
The adjusting procedure for the vehicle speed is the same as for ACC with Low Speed Follow.

To Cancel

Cruise control is canceled when you do any of the following or when your vehicle speed becomes below 22 mph (35 km/h):

- Press the **CANCEL** button or depress the brake pedal.
  » The indicator changes from green to white.
- Press the button.
  » The indicator goes off.

Resuming the prior set speed



When you turn off cruise control by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed (❶) is displayed on the gauge in gray.
You can activate cruise control with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in gray) and by pressing the **RES/+/SET/–** switch up while driving at 25 mph (40 km/h) or above.

❷ Indicator (White)

System Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC with Low Speed Follow functions.

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.
- When near radio wave emitting devices such as other automotive radar sensors.

Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.
- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- Driving through a narrow metal bridge.

Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy load in the trunk or rear seats.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- The area around the radar sensor is obstructed by dirt, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tire chains* are installed.

Examples of conditions under which the system may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognizing it.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

*: Not available on all models

Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly

- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.
- When a vehicle ahead of you is specially-shaped.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as trucks that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.
- You accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- There are animals in front of your vehicle.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.

Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically canceled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected, or the tires are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road for extended periods, or driving off road.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA®, CMBS™, or Low Speed Braking Control* is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA® system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- The area around the radar sensor is obstructed by dirt, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy load in the trunk or rear seats.
- When passing through an enclosed space, such as a tunnel.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist is also activated.
- The power system is turned off.

*: Not available on all models

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

The system assists with both steering operation and maintaining lane-keeping by detecting the left and right white (or yellow) lines using the front sensor camera when the vehicle is driving near the center of the lane.

Front Sensor Camera ▶P.233

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.
The LKAS is convenient when it is used on expressways or freeways.
It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

> ! If the vehicle drifts toward either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, the steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.

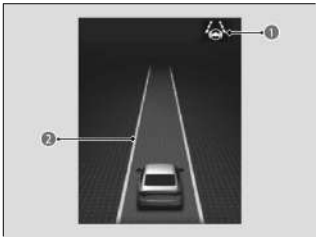
Lane Departure Warning Function

In some driving situations, when the system detects that the vehicle has departed from its lane, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration as well as a warning display.

Operating Conditions

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the center of the lane.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The vehicle is traveling between about 45 and 90 mph (72 and 145 km/h).

How to Activate the System



[1] Press the button.

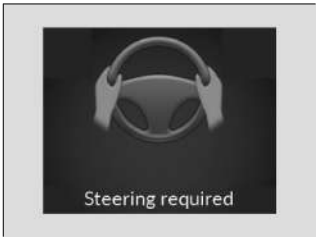
» indicator (white) (❶) appears. The system is standby.

» If traffic lane lines are detected, white lines (❷) appear.

Operating Device ►P.232

[2] Keep your vehicle near the center of the lane while driving.

» The indicator and white lines change from white to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.



If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel or does not adequately maintain control of steering, the warning message will appear.
If the driver does not grip the steering wheel after the warning display has repeatedly appeared, a warning buzzer will sound and LKAS will be canceled.

To Cancel

Press the button.

» To operate LKAS, press the button again.

» The LKAS is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

When the LKAS is suspended under the following circumstances, the indicator changes from green to white, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.
- The system fails to detect lane lines.

- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- The ABS, VSA®, or CMBS™ is activated.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 94 mph (150 km/h).

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

You can change the LKAS suspended beep on and off.
Customized Features ▶P.202

System Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings (in white or yellow), and LKAS may not function properly under certain conditions, including the following:

Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white (or yellow) lines.

- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognized correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through an exit or an interchange.

Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windshield from the windshield wipers.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the trunk or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tire chains* are installed.

*: Not available on all models

Traffic Jam Assist

About Traffic Jam Assist

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a camera mounted to the upper portion of the windshield to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines. Based on inputs from the camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the center of the detected lane.

Front Sensor Camera ▶P.233

Important Safety Reminders

Traffic Jam Assist is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control.
The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.
Traffic Jam Assist is convenient when it is used on expressways or freeways.
It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

Do not use Traffic Jam Assist in any of the following situations:

- You are traveling on a road with sharp curves.
  - 》 The system may not allow your vehicle to respond in a manner best suited for the road conditions.
- You are entering a toll booth, interchange, service area, or parking area.
- You are driving in adverse weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- The surface of the road is slippery; for example, it is icy or covered with snow.
  - 》 The tires may slip, causing you to lose control of the vehicle.

If your vehicle veers too far to the right or the left of the white (or yellow) traffic lane lines while Traffic Jam Assist is active, deactivate Traffic Jam Assist and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Lane Keep Support Function

When you are in heavy traffic and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active, the traffic jam assist system, upon detecting the traffic lane lines, will apply steering torque to help keep your vehicle in the center of the lane.

》 When the driver takes full control of the steering, the steering assist function is temporarily canceled.

》 The torque applied to the steering may not be noticeable when the driver has full control of the steering, or when the surface of the road is rough or uneven.

Lane Departure Warning Function

In some driving situations, when the system detects that the vehicle has departed from its lane, the Traffic Jam Assist alerts you with an audible alert as well as a warning display.

Operating Conditions

- LKAS is activated.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the center of the lane.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The driver is gripping the steering wheel.
- The vehicle is traveling between about 0 and 45 mph (0 and 72 km/h).

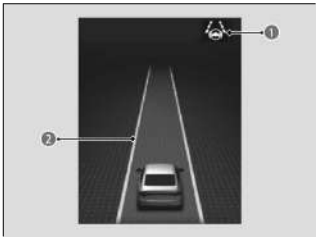
Refer to the following for proper handling of LKAS:

About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ▶P.263

Refer to the following for operating device and displays:

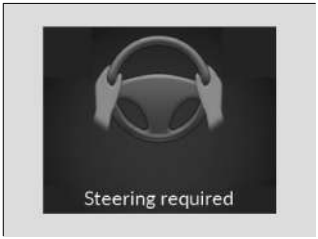
Device for Operating Each Function and Gauge Content ▶P.232

How to Activate the System



Keep your vehicle near the center of the lane while driving.

» The indicator (1) changes from white to green, and white lines (2) change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.



If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel or does not adequately maintain control of steering, the warning will appear.
If the driver does not grip the steering wheel after the warning display has repeatedly appeared, a warning buzzer will sound and Traffic Jam Assist will be canceled.

To Cancel

Press the button to cancel Traffic Jam Assist.

» To operate Traffic Jam Assist, press the button again.

Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- You are driving through a sharp curve.
- The ABS, VSA®, CMBS™, or Low Speed Braking Control is activated.
- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.
- The brake pedal is suddenly depressed.

Once these conditions no longer exist, Traffic Jam Assist automatically resumes.

You can change the setting for the Traffic Jam Assist suspended beep on and off when you select the **Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep** on the audio/information screen.

Customized Features ►P.202

System Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings (in white or yellow), and Traffic Jam Assist may not function properly under certain conditions, including the following:

Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.

- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- When the lane lines or road surface are not visible, such as when the distance to the vehicle in front of you is extremely short or when at an intersection.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or deteriorated lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognized as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognized correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through an exit or an interchange.

Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windshield from the windshield wipers.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the trunk or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tire chains* are installed.

*: Not available on all models

Traffic Sign Recognition System

About Traffic Sign Recognition System

While driving, road signs (such as speed limit signs) detected by the front sensor camera are displayed on the gauge and the head-up display* to inform you of road sign information.

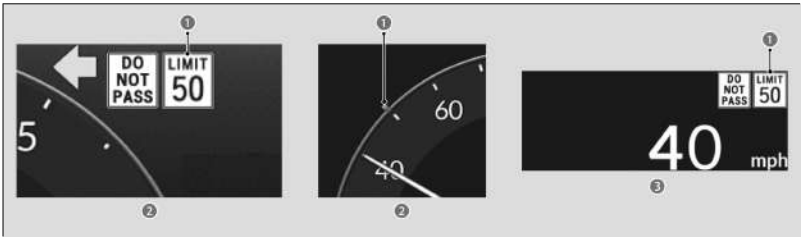
Front Sensor Camera ▶P.233

- Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations. Do not rely too much on the system. Always drive at speeds appropriate for the road conditions.
- Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.
- To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun when parking. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

System Operation

When the camera detects traffic signs while the vehicle is being driven, the system displays recognized signs in your vehicle for a programmed time and distance. If a speed limit sign (❶) is detected and the vehicle exceeds the speed limit by a programmed threshold, the speed limit sign icon will blink.

》 If the system does not detect any traffic signs while you are driving, the sign icon will not be displayed.



❷ **Gauge**

*: Not available on all models

❸ Head-up display*

The sign icon also may switch to another one or disappear when:

- Ther other designated limit is detected.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.

You can turn the Traffic Sign Recognition System on and off.

Customized Features ▶P.202

If your vehicle exceeds the detected speed limit, an icon representing the speed limit sign for the current area will blink in the display.

Customized Features ▶P.202

The default speed limit warning threshold is the maximum speed of the traffic sign detected. You can adjust the threshold for speed limit warning.

Customized Features ▶P.202

The unit for speed limits (mph or km/h) varies from country to country. Just after entering a country whose unit differs from the one of the country from which you came, The Traffic Sign Recognition System may not work correctly.

Customized Features ▶P.202

Speed/distance units ▶P.304

When the traffic sign recognition system malfunctions, appears on the gauge and the head-up display*. If this icon does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

System Limitations

The system's ability to accurately notify the driver of the speed limit is dependent on certain conditions such as the units displayed on the traffic sign as well as the speed and direction of travel of the vehicle. In some cases, the system may display false warnings or other inaccurate information.
The Traffic Sign Recognition system may incorrectly recognize, be slow to identify, or fail to recognize the traffic sign in the following cases.

Environmental conditions

- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night, in dark areas such as long tunnels.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

*: Not available on all models

- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.

Roadway conditions

- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is obstructed by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, accessories, decals, stickers, film, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windshield from the windshield wipers.
- The inside of the windshield is fogged.
- An abnormal tire or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy load in the trunk or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tire chains* are installed.

The position or the condition of the traffic sign

- The sign is in a place that makes it hard to find.
- The sign is located far away from your vehicle.
- The sign is located where it is hard for headlight beams to reach.
- The sign is on a corner or bend in the road.
- The sign is faded or bent.
- The sign is rotated or damaged.
- The sign is covered with mud, snow, or frost.
- Part of the sign is hidden by the trees, or is in the shadow of a vehicle or other object.
- Light (such as a streetlight) is reflected on the surface of the sign, or it is hidden in shadow.
- The sign is too bright or too dark (electric signs).
- Small signs (auxiliary signs, etc.).

Other conditions

- When you are driving at a high speed.

The Traffic Sign Recognition System may not operate correctly, such as displaying signs that do not adhere to the actual regulations for the roadway or do not exist at all in the following cases.

» A speed limit sign may display at a higher or lower speed than the actual speed limit.

*: Not available on all models

- There is a supplementary sign with further information such as weather, time, vehicle type, school zone, etc.
- Figures on the sign are hard to read (electric signs, numbers on the sign are blurred, etc.).
- The sign is in the vicinity of the lane you are driving in, even though it is not for the lane, such as a speed limit sign situated at an exit or an intersection between the side road and the main road.
- There are things that look similar in color or shape to recognized objects (similar sign, electric sign, signboard, structure, etc.).

Blind Spot Information System

About Blind Spot Information System

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on, providing assistance when you change lanes.

When the system detects a vehicle, the blind spot information system alert indicator (1) on the outside door mirror on both sides comes on in the following situations:

- A vehicle approaches you from behind to overtake you at a speed difference of no more than about 31 mph (50 km/h).
- You pass a vehicle at a speed difference of no more than about 12 mph (20 km/h).

When you operate the turn signal lever in the direction of a detected vehicle, the blind spot information system alert indicator blinks and the beeper sounds.
The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur:

- The blind spot information system alert indicator does not come on and the **Blind spot information system not available** message appears on the driver information interface.
- The blind spot information system alert indicator may come on even with the message displayed.

Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, the blind spot information system has limitations. Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes. Overreliance on the blind spot information system may result in a collision.

You can change the settings for the blind spot information system.
Customized Features ▶P.202

System Operation

The system activates when your vehicle is moving forward at about 20 mph (32 km/h) or above.

❶ Alert zone 1
❷ Alert zone 2
❸ Radar Sensors: Underneath the rear bumper corners
❹ Approx. 1.6 ~ 10 feet (0.5 ~ 3 meters) from vehicle side.
❺ Approx. 10 feet (3 meters) from rear bumper.
❻ Approx. 10 ~ 82 feet (3 ~ 25 meters) behind from rear bumper. (The faster the approaching vehicle, the further away it will be detected.)

- The initially set alert zone is alert zone 1. Over time, after the vehicle has been driven on straight roads with traffic and roadside objects, the system will adapt and expand the alert zones (alert zone 1 and 2).
- If the rear bumper or any system components are repaired, the system will revert to alert zone 1 only until it is able to adapt and expand to alert zone 1 and 2.

System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

Switching the Display ▶P.297

Safety Support ▶P.302

- When you turn off the system, it will remain off until you turn it back on.

System Limitations

For proper blind spot information system operation:

- Always keep the rear bumper and area around the radar sensors clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

- There is a large speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle in the adjacent lane.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- The vehicle driving in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.

The blind spot information system may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Making a turn at an intersection.
- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well or a motorcycle is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up signal interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors is obstructed by dirt, mud, snow, ice, etc.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors has been damaged or deformed.
- In bad weather (heavy rain, snow, and fog).
- Making a short turn or driving on a bumpy road that slightly tilts the vehicle.
- An object such as a bicycle rack is attached to the rear of the vehicle.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.

> **!** Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the rear bumper or area around the radar sensors is strongly impacted, or if the rear bumper or any system components need to be repaired.

Cross Traffic Monitor

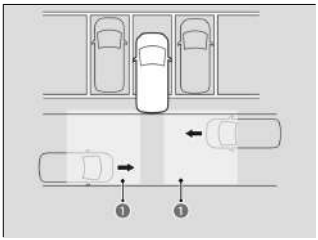
About Cross Traffic Monitor

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.
The system is convenient when you are backing out of a parking space.

⚠ CAUTION

Cross Traffic Monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.
Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.
Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

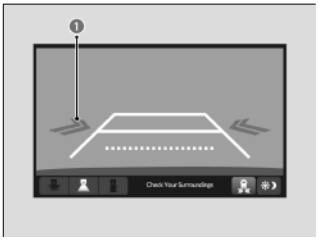
System Operation



1 Detection Range

When the vehicle speed is less than about 3 mph (5 km/h), the shift position is in **R**, and the system is ON, the system will detect vehicles approaching from either rear corner and alert you with a buzzer and a visual indication.
The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.
The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

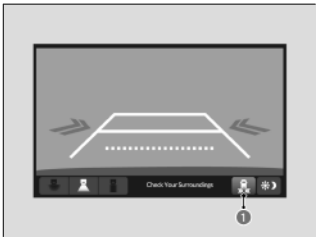
About Screen Display



An arrow icon (1) appears on the side a vehicle is approaching.

- If the [icon] changes to [icon] in amber when the transmission is in R, mud, snow or ice, etc. may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. The system is temporarily canceled. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.
- If the [icon] comes on when the transmission is in R, there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
- If the display remains the same with the transmission in R, there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

System On and Off



The system can be turned on and off on the audio/information screen by selecting the Cross Traffic Monitor icon (1).

You can also switch the system on and off using the audio/information screen.
Customized Features ▶P.202

System Limitations

Cross Traffic Monitor may not detect or may delay alerting an approaching vehicle, or may alert without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:

- An obstacle, such as another vehicle or a wall near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at a speed of about 3 mph (5 km/h) or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at a speed other than between about 6 and 16 mph (10 and 25 km/h).

- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio waves transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing toward a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.

If the rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

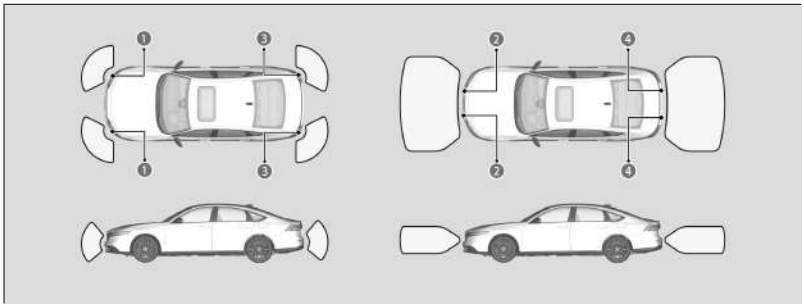
Parking Sensor System*

About Parking Sensor System

The corner and center sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper and display let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

> ! Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The Sensor Location and Range



❶ Front Corner Sensors
❷ Front Center Sensors
❸ Rear Corner Sensors
❹ Rear Center Sensors

System On and Off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

Switching the Display ▶P.297
Safety Support ▶P.302

- When you turn off the system, it will remain off until you turn it back on.

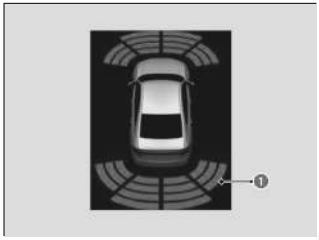
*: Not available on all models

You can turn the rear parking sensor system on and off. If only the rear parking sensors are turned off, the Low Speed Braking Control System will not work when reversing.

Customized Features ▶P.202

Operations When an Obstacle Has Been Detected

The front corner, rear corner, and rear center sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in R, and the vehicle speed is less than 6 mph (9 km/h).
The front corner and front center sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in any position other than P or R, and the vehicle speed is less than 6 mph (9 km/h).



The indicators (1) show the location of the detected location on the driver information interface.

The indicators (1) also show the position of the detected location on the audio/information screen.

Color of Indicator	Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle	
		Corner Sensors	Center Sensors
Yellow*1	Moderate	—	Front: About 35-28 in (90-70 cm) Rear: About 43-26 in (110-65 cm)

Color of Indicator	Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle	
		Corner Sensors	Center Sensors
Amber	Short	Front: About 28-18 in (70-45 cm) Rear: About 26-18 in (65-45 cm)	Front: About 28-22 in (70-55 cm) Rear: About 26-20 in (65-50 cm)
	Very short	About 18-14 in (45-35 cm)	Front: About 22-18 in (55-45 cm) Rear: About 20-16 in (50-40 cm)
Red	Continuous	About 14 in (35 cm) or less	Front: About 18 in (45 cm) or less Rear: About 16 in (40 cm) or less

*1: When the indicator is yellow, only the center sensors detect obstacles.

To temporarily turn off the beeper, press the right selector wheel while it is sounding. Temporary OFF will be canceled when the shift position changes from P/R to N/D or vice-versa, or the vehicle speed reaches 9 mph (14 km/h) or higher.

System Limitations

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- There is something nearby that emits ultrasonic waves or high frequency sounds.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

The system may not detect these obstacles:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

The system may falsely detect obstacles in the following situations:

- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- There is splashing water near the sensors due to heavy rains, etc.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

If you put any accessories (such as a bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the system may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.

Customized Features ►P.202

About Your Instrument Panel

Indicators

Indicator List····· 285
When Indicators Come On/Blink····· 286

Gauges

Types of Gauges····· 293

Driver Information Interface

About the Driver Information Interface····· 297
Driver Information Interface Right Side Area·· 297
Driver Information Interface Left Side Area··· 305

Head-Up Display*

About the Head-Up Display····· 307
Head-Up Display Settings····· 308
Speedometer····· 309
Navigation····· 309
Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow,
LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist····· 310

*: Not available on all models

Indicators

Indicator List

▼ U.S. *1 BRAKE Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) P.287	▼ Canada *1 Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) P.287	▼ U.S. *1 BRAKE SYSTEM Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) P.288	▼ Canada *1 Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) P.288	*1 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator P.288
Seat Belt Reminder Indicator P.288	*1 Supplemental Restraint System Indicator P.288	*1 Malfunction Indicator Lamp P.289	*1 POWER SYSTEM **POWER SYSTEM** Indicator P.289	Low Fuel Indicator P.289
*1 ABS Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator P.289	*1 Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System Indicator P.290	OFF Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) **OFF** Indicator P.290	*1 Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator P.290	*1 Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS Indicator* P.290
System Message Indicator P.305	Transmission System Indicator P.291	D Shift Position Indicator P.102	M Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator P.134	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval Indicator P.256
NORMAL **NORMAL** Mode Indicator P.132	SPORT **SPORT** Mode Indicator P.132	INDIVIDUAL **INDIVIDUAL** Mode Indicator P.132	ECON ECON Mode Indicator P.132	AUTO **AUTO** Mode Indicator P.132

*: Not available on all models

EV **EV** Mode Indicator P.132	CHARGE **CHARGE** Mode Indicator P.132	READY **READY** Indicator P.98	EV **EV** Indicator P.17	*1 BRAKE HOLD Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator P.108
▼ U.S. *1 HOLD Automatic Brake Hold Indicator P.108	▼ Canada *1 Automatic Brake Hold Indicator P.108	Cruise Mode Indicator (White/Green) P.258	Turn Signal Indicators P.120	Hazard Warning Indicators
Lights On Indicator P.120	*1 Auto High-Beam Indicator P.123	High Beam Indicator P.122	*1 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber) P.291	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (White/Green) P.232
*1 Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber) P.291	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green) P.232	*1 Safety Support Indicator (Amber) P.291	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Gray) P.302	Immobilizer System Indicator P.55
Security System Alarm Indicator P.57				

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the power system has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

When Indicators Come On/Blink

Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may be displayed at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as having your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If a message is displayed saying the vehicle cannot be driven, immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.
After reconnecting the 12-volt battery, if multiple indicators come on and **Systems initializing** is displayed, drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20 km/h). If the indicators do not go off, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

▼U.S. ▼Canada

BRAKE

Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)

Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.
Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.

» Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

» If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.

Checking the Brake Fluid ►P.330

» If abnormal, take immediate action. Pull the [-] deceleration paddle selector as many times as needed to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

- Have your vehicle repaired immediately. It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, pull the [-] deceleration paddle selector as many times as needed to help slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.

- If the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) and Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) come on simultaneously, the braking system may be less effective than usual. Make sure to depress the brake pedal firmly. Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.
- If the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

Blinks if there is a problem with the electric parking brake.

» Do not use the parking brake.

» Put the transmission into [P] to prevent the vehicle from moving, as the parking brake may not work.

- If the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red) blinks at the same time when the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
- If you repeatedly operate the electric parking brake in a short period of time, the brake stops operating to prevent heating of the system and the indicator blinks. It returns to its original state in approximately 1 minute.

Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)

Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.
Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system.

» Do not use the parking brake.

- Comes on if the vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the trunk or rear seats.

12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.

Seat Belt Reminder Indicator

Comes on or blinks when any seat belts are unfastened.

» Securely fasten seat belts immediately.

Seat Belt Reminder ►P.79

- Comes on or blinks when a seat belt in the rear seat is unfastened. Turns off momentarily.
- If this indicator stays on after you and/or the passengers have fastened the seat belt(s), a detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
- You can check whether each seat belt is fastened on the driver information interface.

Switching the Display ►P.297

Supplemental Restraint System Indicator

Comes on if a problem with the airbag system or seat belt tensioners is detected.

About Your Airbags ►P.40

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

After you set the power mode to ON, this indicator will turn on for a short time while performing system checks. Immediately after, this indicator will blink several times if the readiness codes are not set.

» Readiness codes are part of the on-board diagnostics for the emissions control systems.

Testing of Readiness Codes ▶P.393

Comes on if there is a problem with the engine's emissions control systems or electric vehicle system.

- If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control systems and the engine could be damaged.
- Comes on when there is no fuel and the engine cannot generate electricity, and goes off after vehicle is refueled, power mode is turned on, vehicle is driven, and the power system is turned off multiple times. If it does not go off, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.

» Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

POWER SYSTEM Indicator

Comes on if there is a problem with the electric vehicle system.

» If this indicator stays on constantly, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Low Fuel Indicator

Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 1.6 U.S. gal/6.2 Liters left).

Range ▶P.298

Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator

Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS.

- With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no ABS function. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking, so avoid situations such as highway driving.

Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System Indicator

Blinks when VSA® is active.
Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA® system or hill start assist system.

- With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability.

Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF Indicator

Comes on when you partially disable VSA®.

Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System ►P.136

Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator

Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.

》 Stop your vehicle in a safe place. If this indicator stays on after restarting the power system, take your vehicle to a dealer for an inspection immediately.

Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator*

May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete.
Comes on and stays on when:

- The system has not been calibrated.
- One or more tires' pressures are determined to be significantly low.
  - 》 Stop in a safe place, check tire pressures, and inflate the tire(s) if necessary.
  - 》 Stays on after the tires are inflated to the recommended pressures.
- The system needs to be calibrated.

System Calibration ►P.138

If this indicator stays on after blinking, there is a problem with the TPMS.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ►P.138

*: Not available on all models

Transmission System Indicator

Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)

Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow.

- Comes on if the vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the trunk or rear seats.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)

Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.

» LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist cannot be used.

- Comes on if the vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the trunk or rear seats.

Safety Support Indicator (Amber)

Comes on if there is a problem with any of the safety support systems.

Safety Support ►P.302

- Comes on if the vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the trunk or rear seats.

▼ Models with parking sensor system

Comes on if there is a problem with the parking sensor.

» Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc.

About Parking Sensor System ►P.281

▼ All models

Comes on when driver assist system functions are limited because the radar sensor is covered with obstacles such as dirt.

Radar Sensor ►P.235

Comes on when driver assist system functions are limited because the camera's temperature is too high.

Front Sensor Camera ►P.233

Comes on when driver assist system functions are limited because of poor camera visibility due to poor weather such as rain, fog, snow, or due to dark surroundings such as in early morning, late evening, or the inside of a tunnel at night.

- Comes on when the area around the camera is covered by obstacles.

Front Sensor Camera ▶P.233

Comes on when the blind spot information system's sensor is dirty.

» Park in a safe place and check the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor and remove any obstacles.

About Blind Spot Information System ▶P.275

Comes on when the temperature of the blind spot information system sensor is high.

» The system will return to normal when the temperature cools down.

▼ Models with Low Speed Braking Control

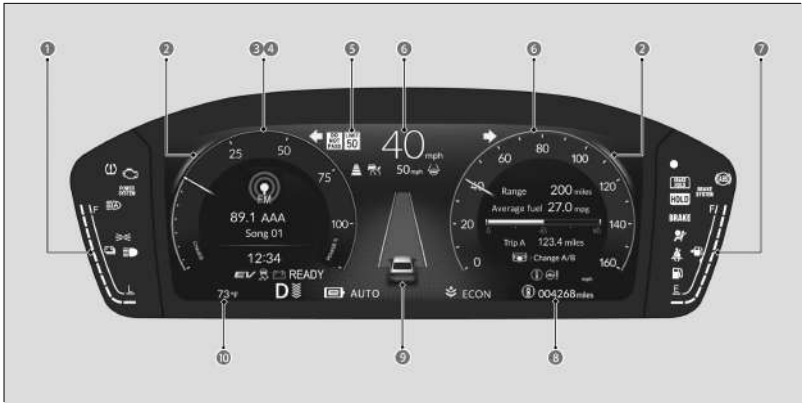
Comes on when the Low Speed Braking Control System's functions are limited because the sonar sensor is covered by obstacles.

Sonar Sensors* ▶P.236

About Low Speed Braking Control ▶P.244

Gauges

Types of Gauges



❶ High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge
❷ Ambient Meter
❸ **POWER** Gauge
❹ **CHARGE/DECEL** Gauge
❺ Traffic Sign Recognition System
❻ Speedometer
❼ Fuel Gauge
❽ Odometer
❾ Current Mode for Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), and Traffic Jam Assist
❿ Outside Temperature

Speedometer

Displays your driving speed.

- You can change the Speed/Distance units.

Speed/distance units ▶P.304
Customized Features ▶P.202

▼ U.S. models

- If you change the unit from miles and mph to km and km/h, the current vehicle speed in mph appears next to the digital speedometer.

❶ Vehicle Speed in mph

Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

- You should refuel when the reading approaches **E**.
- Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.
- After lightly refueling, or depending on your vehicle's condition, the actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

Ambient Meter

Changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel-efficient manner with **SPORT** mode off.

High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Shows the remaining High Voltage battery charge level.

- The High Voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:
  - 》 When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
  - 》 When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
  - 》 When the High Voltage battery control system corrects its reading.
- Changes in the temperature of the High Voltage battery can cause the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge to change.

POWER Gauge

Shows the output of the electric motor.

CHARGE/DECEL Gauge

Shows the degree to which the High Voltage battery is being charged.
When the deceleration paddle selector is being used, it shows the strength of deceleration.

Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature.

- The temperature sensor is in the front bumper.
- Your vehicle, surrounding vehicles, and road heat can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h). Also, the display is not updated until the temperature reading has stabilized. This may take several minutes.

You can adjust the temperature displayed on the gauge.

Customized Features ►P.202

Traffic Sign Recognition System

Shows certain detected traffic signs while driving. If speed limit warning is activated, the sign icon blinks when the maximum speed of the traffic sign detected is exceeded by a threshold, when compared with the vehicle speed.

About Traffic Sign Recognition System ►P.271

- The default speed limit warning threshold is the maximum speed of the traffic sign detected.

You can adjust the threshold for speed limit warning.

Customized Features ►P.202

Current Mode for Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), and Traffic Jam Assist

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist.

About Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ►P.252

About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ►P.263

About Traffic Jam Assist ►P.267

- When you set speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow or cruise control, a set speed mark will be displayed on the speedometer.

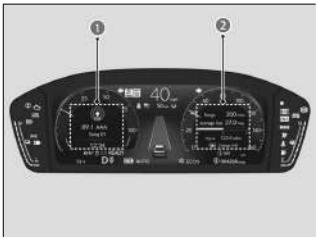
1 Set Speed

Odometer

Shows the total distance that your vehicle has traveled.

Driver Information Interface

About the Driver Information Interface



❶ Driver Information Interface Left Side Area
❷ Driver Information Interface Right Side Area

The driver information interface shows your vehicle's condition and alerts you with a warning message when an abnormality is detected.
When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary.
Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine oil pressure low**, **Engine temperature too hot** or **Limited stopping power!** message is displayed.

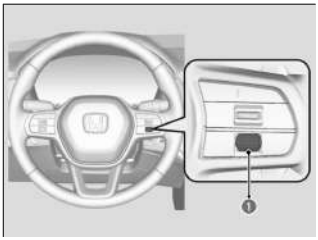
If the Engine oil pressure low. Warning Appears ►P.372

How to Handle Overheating ►P.370

If the Limited stopping power Warning Appears ►P.373

Driver Information Interface Right Side Area

Switching the Display



❶ Right Selector Wheel

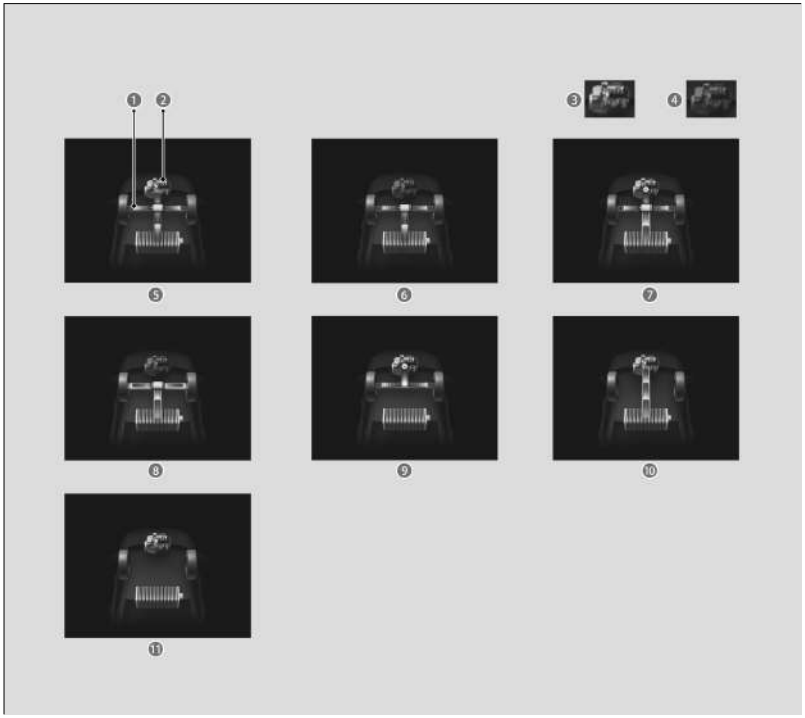
Roll the right selector wheel to view different types of content.

- You can add or delete the meter contents.

Gauge Display Settings ►P.304

Power Flow Monitor

Displays the power flow of the motor and engine, indicating the vehicle's power source and whether the battery is being charged.



❶ Power Flow
❷ Engine
❸ Engine ON
❹ Engine OFF
❺ Hybrid (HV): Power is supplied by the motor and the engine. (Blue)
❻ Electric Vehicle (EV): Power is supplied by the motor. (Blue)
❼ Engine (Direct Drive): Power is being supplied to charge the High Voltage battery and supply power to the wheels. (Blue/Green)
❽ Regeneration: The motor is charging the High Voltage battery. (Green)
❾ Power is being supplied by the engine only. (Blue)
❿ The engine is running and the motor is charging the High Voltage battery. (Green)
⓫ The vehicle is stationary with the engine running.

Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power and fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

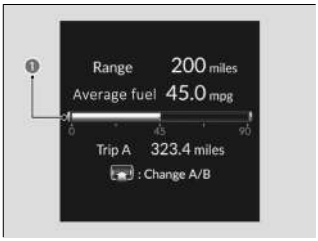
- The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ from the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

Average Fuel Economy

Shows the average fuel economy for trip meters A and B in set intervals.

- The average fuel economy displayed may differ from the amount consumed while actually driving.
- If it was reset while parked or driving at a low speed, calculation of fuel economy will start after you resume normal driving.

Instant Fuel Economy



Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph.

❶ **Instant Fuel Economy**

Trip Meter

Shows the total distance driven since the last reset.
Press the right selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.
Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

- To reset the trip meter, display it, press and hold the right selector wheel, and then select **Reset**. The trip meter is reset to 0.0. Additionally, average fuel economy, average speed, and elapsed time will also be reset.
- When the trip meter exceeds 9999.9 miles or kilometers, it resets to 0.0.

The trip meter can reset automatically after refueling.
Customized Features ►P.202

Average Speed

Shows the average speed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Navigation

The map*, compass screen, and turn-by-turn directions appear based on the driving guidance provided by Google Maps*, Apple CarPlay, or Android Auto.

Google built-in* ▶P.184
Apple CarPlay ▶P.193
Android Auto™ ▶P.195

- Navigation features may not be available for all devices or apps.

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

Customized Features ▶P.202

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyzes steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention on the driver information interface.

When you select **Driver attention** on the driver information interface, bars on it light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

Switching the Display ▶P.297

❶ Level

If two bars light up, the **Driver attention level low** message will appear.

*: Not available on all models

If one bar lights up, the **Driver attention level low. Time for a break.** message will appear, a beep will sound, and the steering wheel will vibrate.
If this message appears, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.
The message will disappear when the right selector wheel is rolled or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.
If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the message will appear again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.
The message does not appear when the traveling time is 30 minutes or less.

- The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.
- Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.

You can change the system settings.
Customized Features ▶P.202

The Driver Attention Monitor resets when:

- The power system is turned off.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

- The vehicle must be traveling above 25 mph (40 km/h).
- The electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.
- The bars on the driver information interface remain grayed-out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances:

- The steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) or Traffic Jam Assist is active.
  About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ▶P.263
  About Traffic Jam Assist ▶P.267
- The condition of the road is poor; e.g., the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- It is windy.
- The driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner, such as changing lanes or accelerating.

Seat Belts

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

Seat Belt Reminder ▶P.79

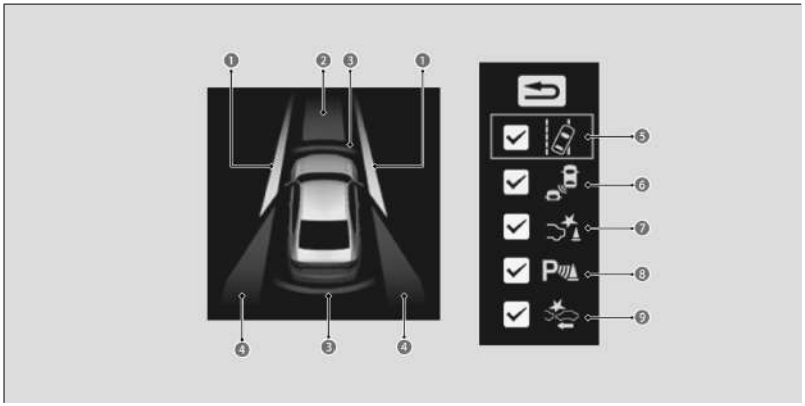
Maintenance

Shows the remaining oil life and Maintenance Minder™.

About Maintenance Minder™ ▶P.315

Safety Support

Safety Support indicates the operating status of the following systems.



❶ **Operating Status for Road Departure Mitigation System**
❷ **Operating Status for CMBS™**
❸ **Operating Status for Low Speed Braking Control* and Parking Sensor System***
❹ **Operating Status for Blind Spot Information System**
❺ **Road Departure Mitigation System**
❻ **Blind Spot Information System**
❼ **Low Speed Braking Control***
❽ **Parking Sensor System***
❾ **CMBS™**

The following colors indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:
- Green: The system is on.
- Gray: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.

*: Not available on all models

- To turn each system on or off, first press the right selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display, you can select which system to turn on or off.

About Road Departure Mitigation System ►P.248
About Blind Spot Information System ►P.275
About Low Speed Braking Control ►P.244
About Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) ►P.238
About Parking Sensor System ►P.281

- When all features are ON, the safety support indicator lights up in green. It lights up in green/gray when one or some of the features are ON, and it lights up in gray when all features are OFF.
- See below if the indicator lights up in amber.

Safety Support Indicator (Amber) ►P.291

▼ Models with Low Speed Braking Control

- Even when the Low Speed Braking Control icon is green, if the **Rear Sensor Setting** is turned off, the brake assist will not operate when reversing.

Customized Features ►P.202

▼ Models with parking sensor system

- Even when the parking sensor system icon is green, if the **Rear Sensor Setting** is turned off, the rear parking sensor will not operate when reversing.

Customized Features ►P.202

Brightness Setting

Displays the adjustment for instrument panel brightness.
When the power mode is in ON, you can use the right selector wheel to adjust instrument panel brightness.

- **Brighten:** Roll the right selector wheel up.
- **Dim:** Roll the right selector wheel down.

Press the right selector wheel to exit.

- The brightness of the gauge is automatically adjusted depending on the ambient brightness.
  - 》 The brightness decreases when the ambient light is dark.
  - 》 The brightness increases when the ambient light is bright.
- You can change the setting even when the ambient lighting is bright, but the brightness of the gauge won't change.

Head-Up Display Settings*

Head-Up Display Settings ►P.308

*: Not available on all models

Vehicle Stability Assist Mode

You can turn the VSA® on or off.
Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Reduce traction control**, then press the right selector wheel to check or uncheck it.

Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System ▶P.136

Gauge Display Settings

Speed/distance units

Enables you to set the displayed measurements to read in either miles and mph or km and km/h.

[1] Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Gauge display settings** on the driver information interface.
[2] Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Speed/distance units**, then press the right selector wheel.
[3] Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select your desired settings, then press the right selector wheel.

Arrange content on the right side area

You can choose which contents to display on the right side area.

[1] Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Gauge display settings** on the driver information interface.
[2] Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/show**, then press the right selector wheel.
[3] Roll the right selector wheel to scroll between contents, then press the right selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

- Contents that are gray cannot be removed from the right side area.
- When you customize settings, shift to **P**.

Change gauge design

You can change the gauge design.

[1] Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Gauge display settings** on the driver information interface.
[2] Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Gauge design**, then press the right selector wheel.
[3] Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select your desired settings, then press the right selector wheel.

- When using the **Round minimal** or **Bar minimal** gauge design, a simplified display is used when ACC with Low Speed Follow is in operation.

Warnings

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

- If there are multiple warnings, you can roll the right selector wheel to see other warnings.
- When there is a warning message, the ⓘ system message indicator lights up.

Driver Information Interface Left Side Area

Shows the current mode for audio and phone information, etc.

Audio Remote Controls ▶P.165
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® ▶P.197

Clock

Shows the clock.

- You can choose whether the clock is displayed on the driver information interface.
  Customize Display ▶P.305

Clock Setup

Manual time adjustment is not necessary because the clock is using satellite information.
For details on other settings, please refer to the Navigation or Audio instruction manuals for your vehicle.

Customize Display

- When you customize settings, shift to **P**.

Arrange audio source on the left side area

You can choose which sources to display on the audio source screen.

[1] Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.
[2] Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/show**, then press the left selector wheel.
[3] Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between audio sources, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

Turn the displaying on the left side area on and off

You can select whether the current audio information and clock appear on the left side area.

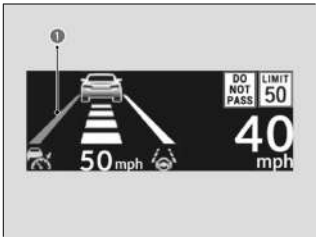
[1] Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.

[2] Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Display content**, then press the left selector wheel.
[3] Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select your desired settings, then press the left selector wheel.

Head-Up Display*

About the Head-Up Display

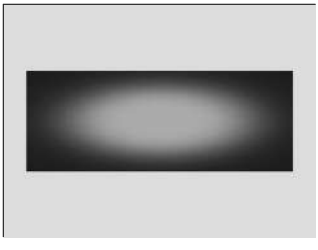
Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist; compass, or turn-by-turn directions; and the vehicle speed. You can choose which item to be displayed using the driver information interface. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.
The display also shows the following messages.



❶ Lane Departure Warning

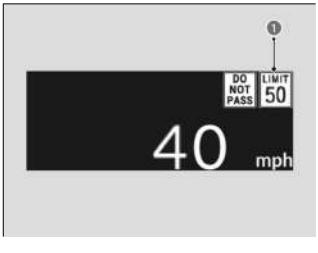
- **Lane Departure Warning**: When your vehicle is too close to the traffic lane lines, the lane departure warning appears.

About Road Departure Mitigation System ►P.248
About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ►P.263
About Traffic Jam Assist ►P.267



- **Head-up Warning Lights**: Flash when the **BRAKE** message appears on the driver information interface.

About Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) ►P.238
About Low Speed Braking Control ►P.244
About Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ►P.252



❶ Traffic Sign Recognition System

- **Traffic Sign Recognition System**: Shows certain detected traffic signs while driving. If speed limit warning is activated, the sign icon blinks when the maximum speed of the traffic sign detected is exceeded by a threshold, when compared with the vehicle speed.

About Traffic Sign Recognition System ►P.271

- The default speed limit warning threshold is the maximum speed of the traffic sign detected.

*: Not available on all models

You can adjust the threshold for speed limit warning.
Customized Features ▶P.202

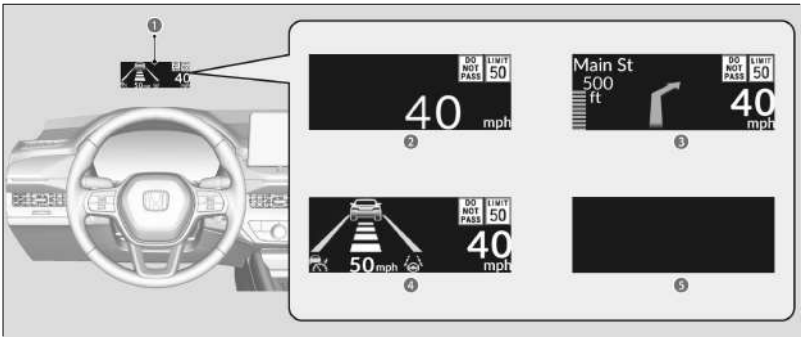
Head-Up Display Settings

Shows the display for changing the head-up display settings on the driver information interface. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Head-Up Display settings**, then press the right selector wheel.
Switching the Display ▶P.297

To change head-up display content

[1] Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **HUD content**, then press the right selector wheel.
[2] Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select desired item, then press the right selector wheel.

- **Speedometer**
  Speedometer ▶P.309
- **Navigation**
  Navigation ▶P.309
- **Driver assist**
  Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist ▶P.310
- **OFF**



1. Head-Up Display
2. Speedometer
3. Navigation
4. Driver assist
5. OFF

Adjusting the head-up display brightness

Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **HUD brightness**, then press the right selector wheel.
Brighten: Roll the right selector wheel up.
Dim: Roll the right selector wheel down.
Press the right selector wheel to exit.

Adjusting the head-up display height

Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **HUD height**, then press the right selector wheel.
Raise the head-up display: Roll the right selector wheel up.
Lower the head-up display: Roll the right selector wheel down.
Press the right selector wheel to exit.

Adjusting the head-up display angle

Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **HUD rotation**, then press the right selector wheel.
Rotate the head-up display clockwise: Roll the right selector wheel down.
Rotate the head-up display counterclockwise: Roll the right selector wheel up.
Press the right selector wheel to exit.

- When you unlock and open the driver's door with a remote transmitter or keyless access system, the head-up display adjusts automatically to one of the two preset positions.

Speedometer

Shows your driving speed.

- You can change the speed/distance units.

Speed/distance units ►P.304
Customized Features ►P.202

Navigation

The compass screen and turn-by-turn directions appear based on the driving guidance provided by Google Maps, Apple CarPlay, or Android Auto.

Google built-in* ►P.184
Apple CarPlay ►P.193
Android Auto™ ►P.195

- Navigation features may not be available for all devices or apps.

You can select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.
Customized Features ►P.202

Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist.

About Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow ►P.252
About Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ►P.263
About Traffic Jam Assist ►P.267

Maintenance

Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance 312
Maintenance Safety 313
Vehicle Safety 313

Maintenance Minder™

About Maintenance Minder™ 315
To Use Maintenance Minder™ 315

Maintenance Under the Hood

Maintenance Items Under the Hood 320
Opening the Hood 321
Recommended Engine Oil 322
Oil Check 323
Adding Engine Oil 324
Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter 324
Engine Coolant 326
High Voltage System Coolant 328
Transmission Fluid 329
Brake Fluid 329
Refilling Window Washer Fluid 330

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades

Lifting the Wiper Arms 331
Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber 331

Checking and Maintaining Tires

Checking Tires 333
Tire and Loading Information Label 334
Tire Labeling 335
DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles) 337
Wear Indicators 339
Tire Service Life 339
Tire and Wheel Replacement 339
Winter Tires 340
Tire Rotation 341

12-Volt Battery

Maintaining 12-Volt Battery 343
Checking the 12-Volt Battery 344
Charging the 12-Volt Battery 344

Climate Control System Maintenance

Air Conditioning 345

Cleaning

Interior Care 346
Exterior Care 347

Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition.
If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. (Note, however, that service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect.)

Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  Brake Fluid ▶P.329
- Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  Checking Tires ▶P.333
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  About the Vehicle's LED Exterior Lighting ▶P.351
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber ▶P.331

Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips or when washing the vehicle.

▼ U.S. models

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individuals using parts that are "certified" to EPA standards.
According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the maintenance main items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, all maintenance services should be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the driver information interface.
Maintenance Service Items ▶P.317
If you want to perform complex maintenance tasks that require more skills and tools, you can purchase a subscription to the Service Express website at *https://techinfo.honda.com*.
Authorized Manuals ▶P.1
If you want to perform maintenance yourself, make sure that you have the necessary tools and skills first. After performing maintenance, update the records in the separate maintenance booklet.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you or a passenger can be seriously hurt or killed.
Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations according to the schedules in this owner's manual.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you or a passenger to be seriously hurt or killed.
Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the hood.
  » Heat from the surrounding parts can ignite them, causing a fire.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the hood.
  » Heat from the surrounding parts can ignite them, causing a fire.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  » Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.

Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be stationary.
  » Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the power system is turned off.
- Do not touch the high voltage battery and wiring (orange).
- Make sure that the radiator fan is stopped before inspecting the engine compartment.
  » Depending on the vehicle condition, the radiator fan may operate even when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  » Make sure to let the power system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.

- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  » Do not set the power mode to ON unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.
- The use of Honda Genuine Parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda Genuine Parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

> ! Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

Maintenance Minder™

About Maintenance Minder™

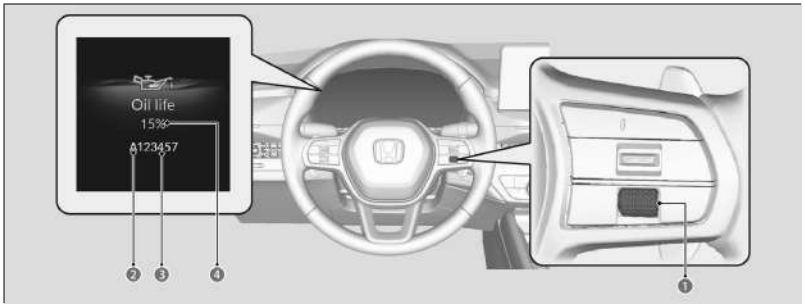
If the engine oil life is less than 15%, you will see the Maintenance Minder messages appear on the driver information interface every time you set the power mode to ON. The messages notify you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

To Use Maintenance Minder™

Displaying the Maintenance Minder Information

Maintenance items, which should be serviced at the same time that you replace the engine oil, appear on the driver information interface.
You can view them on the engine oil life screen at any time.

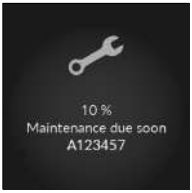
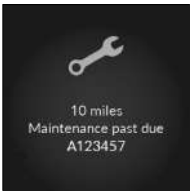
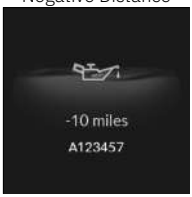
[1] Set the power mode to ON.
[2] Roll the right selector wheel until the Maintenance Minder screen is displayed. The engine oil life appears on the driver information interface along with maintenance items due soon.



❶ **Right Selector Wheel**
❷ **Main Item**
❸ **Sub Item**
❹ **Engine Oil Life**

Based on the engine operating conditions, the remaining engine oil life is calculated and displayed as a percentage.

Maintenance Minder Information on the Driver Information Interface

Maintenance Message	Oil Life Display	Explanation	Information
—		When you select the Maintenance Minder screen, it displays codes for maintenance items due at the next engine oil change, along with the percentage of engine oil life remaining.	—
Maintenance Due Soon 	15% 	The remaining engine oil life is 15 to 6 percent. Roll the right selector wheel to switch to another display.	The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced soon.
Maintenance Due Now 	5% 	The remaining engine oil life is 5 to 1 percent. Roll the right selector wheel to switch to another display.	The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance items should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.
Maintenance Past Due 	Negative Distance 	The engine oil life has passed its service life, and a negative distance appears after driving over 10 miles (U.S. models) or 10 km (Canadian models). The negative distance on the display blinks. Roll the right selector wheel to switch to another display.	The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance items must be inspected and serviced immediately.

The system message indicator (ⓘ) comes on along with the Maintenance Minder message.

Maintenance Service Items

▼ U.S. models

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace engine oil*1

B	• Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter
	• Inspect front and rear brakes
	• Check expiration date for tire repair kit bottle (if equipped)
	• Inspect these items:
	  • Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots
	  • Suspension components
	  • Driveshaft boots
	  • Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA®)
	  • All fluid levels and condition of fluids
	  • Exhaust system#
	  • Fuel lines and connections#

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element*2 • Replace dust and pollen filter*3
3	• Replace transmission fluid*4
4	• Replace spark plugs
5	• Replace engine coolant
7	• Replace brake fluid*5

*1: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel powered vehicles, replace every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
*4: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 47,500 miles or 3 years (76,000 km or 3 years).
*5: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.

#: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

About Warranty Coverages ►P.394

▼ Canadian models

CODE	Maintenance Main Items
A	• Replace engine oil*1
0	• Replace engine oil*1 and oil filter

CODE	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element*2 • Replace dust and pollen filter*3
3	• Replace transmission fluid*4
4	• Replace spark plugs
5	• Replace engine coolant
7	• Replace brake fluid*5

9	• Service front and rear brakes
	• Check expiration date for tire repair kit bottle (if equipped)
	• Inspect these items:
	  • Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots
	  • Suspension components
	  • Driveshaft boots
	  • Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA®)
	  • All fluid levels and condition of fluids
	  • Exhaust system#
	  • Fuel lines and connections#

*1: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.
*2: If you drive in dusty conditions, replace every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
*3: If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel powered vehicles, replace every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).
*4: Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds results in higher transmission temperatures. This requires transmission fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission fluid changed every 47,500 miles or 3 years (76,000 km or 3 years).
*5: If a Maintenance Minder message does not appear more than 36 months after the display for item 7 is reset, change the brake fluid every 3 years.

#: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty.

About Warranty Coverages ▶P.394

Resetting the Display

Reset the maintenance minder information display if you have performed the maintenance service.

[1] Set the power mode to ON.
[2] Roll the right selector wheel until the Maintenance Minder screen is displayed.
[3] Press and hold the right selector wheel for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
[4] Roll the right selector wheel to select a maintenance item to reset, or to select **All due items** (you can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
[5] Press the right selector wheel to reset the selected item.
[6] Repeat from step 3 for other items you wish to reset.

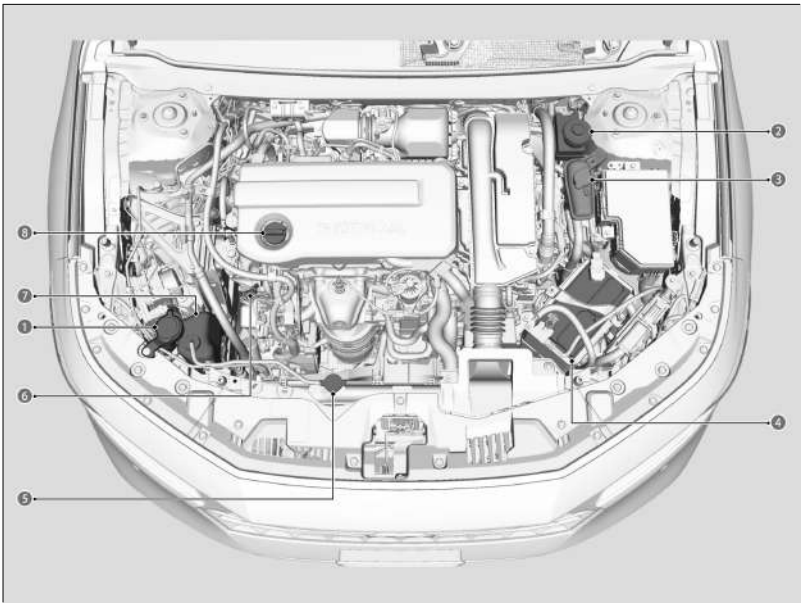
> ! Failure to reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the Maintenance Minder™ display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the Maintenance Minder™ display yourself.
You can also reset the Maintenance Minder™ display using the driver information interface.

Maintenance Info. ▶P.209

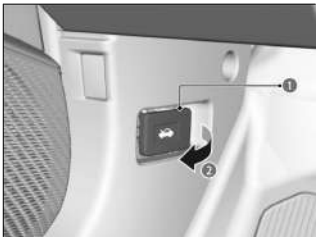
Maintenance Under the Hood

Maintenance Items Under the Hood



1. Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)
2. Brake Fluid (Black Cap)
3. High Voltage System Coolant Tank
4. 12-Volt Battery
5. Radiator Cap
6. Engine Oil Dipstick (Orange)
7. Engine Coolant Reserve Tank
8. Engine Oil Fill Cap

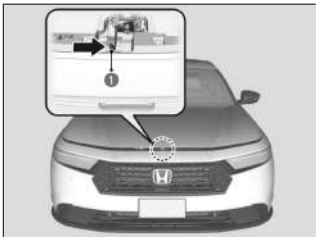
Opening the Hood



❶ Hood Release Handle
❷ Pull

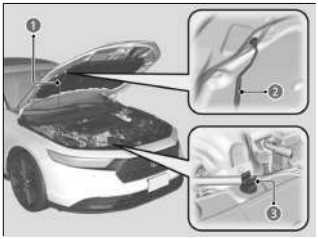
[1] Pull the hood release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.

» The hood will pop up slightly.



❶ Lever

[2] Push the hood latch lever (located under the front edge of the hood to the center) to the side and raise the hood. Once you have raised the hood slightly, you can release the lever.



❶ Support Rod
❷ Grip
❸ Clamp

[3] Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip.
Mount the support rod in the hood.

- Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
- When closing the hood, check that the hood is securely latched.
- If the hood latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

⚠ WARNING

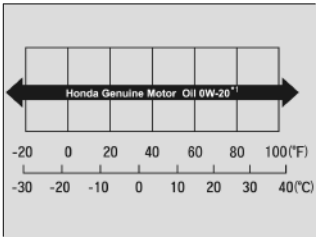
The hood support rod can become very hot due to heat from the engine. To ensure against possible burns, do not handle the metal section of the rod. Use the foam grip instead.

Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised.
The hood will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the hood and/or the wipers.

Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

Recommended Engine Oil

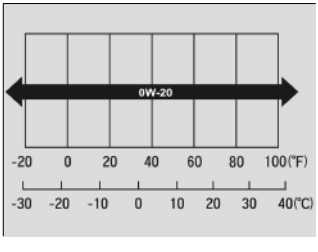
Use a Genuine Honda Motor Oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown.
Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.



Genuine Engine Oil

- Honda Genuine Motor Oil

*1: Formulated to improve fuel economy.



Commercial Engine Oil

- API service SN or higher grade fuel-efficient oil
- API Certification Mark "Starburst"

The seal shown left indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.

Engine oil additives

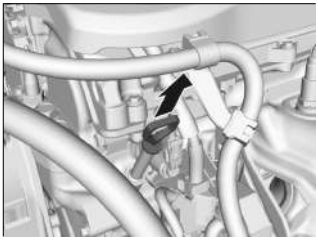
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

Synthetic oil

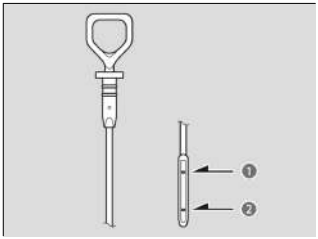
You may also use synthetic motor oil if it is labeled with the API Certification Seal and is the specified viscosity grade.

Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
Park the vehicle on level ground.
Turn off the power system. You can check the oil level without the engine having run beforehand. If the engine has been running, wait approximately three minutes before you check the oil.



[1] Remove the dipstick (orange).
[2] Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
[3] Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

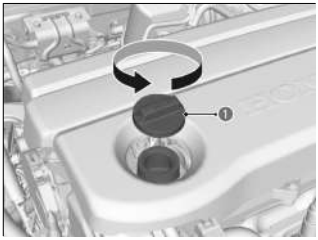


[4] Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

❶ **Upper Mark**
❷ **Lower Mark**

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

Adding Engine Oil



[1] Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
[2] Add oil slowly.
[3] Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
[4] Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

❶ **Engine Oil Fill Cap**

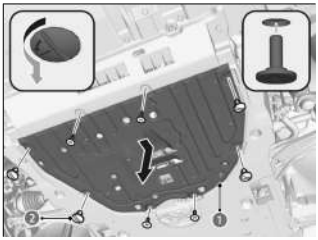
> ❗ Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.
Use a neutral detergent to remove it if it spills on the engine cover. Do not use organic solvents such as brake cleaner.

Changing the Engine Oil and Oil Filter

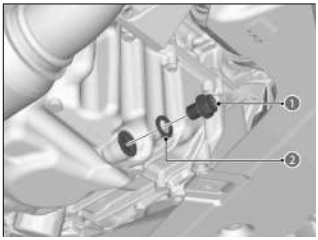
You must change the engine oil and oil filter regularly in order to maintain the engine's lubrication. The engine may be damaged if they are not changed regularly.
Turn the power system off before changing the engine oil or oil filter.

Change the oil and filter in accordance with the maintenance message on the driver information interface.



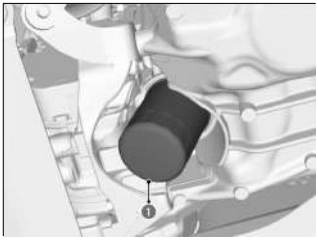
❶ Under Cover
❷ Screws

[1] Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, and then turn the engine off.
[2] Open the hood and remove the engine oil fill cap.
[3] Remove the Phillips-head screws and slotted head screws by turning 90° counter-clockwise on the undercarriage and remove the under cover.



❶ Drain Bolt
❷ Washer

[4] Remove the drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine, and drain the oil into a suitable container.



❶ **Oil Filter**

[5] Remove the oil filter and dispose of the remaining oil.

[6] Check that the filter gasket is not stuck to the engine contact surface.

» If it is stuck, you must detach it.

[7] Wipe away dirt and dust adhering to the contact surface of the engine block, and install a new oil filter.

» Apply a light coat of new engine oil to the filter gasket.

[8] Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt.

» Tightening torque: 30 lbf·ft (40 N·m, 4.0 kgf·m)

[9] Pour the recommended engine oil into the engine.

» Engine oil change capacity (including filter): 4.2 US qt (4.0 L)

[10] Reinstall the engine oil fill cap securely and start the engine.

[11] Run the engine for a few minutes, and then check that there is no leak from the drain bolt or oil filter.

[12] Stop the engine, wait for three minutes, and then check the oil level on the dipstick.

» If necessary, add more engine oil.

You will need a special wrench to replace the oil filter. You can buy this wrench from a dealer.
When installing the new oil filter, follow the instructions supplied with the oil filter. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. If the low oil pressure warning appears, turn off the engine, and check your work.

> **!** You may damage the environment if you do not dispose of the oil in a suitable way. If you are changing the oil by yourself, appropriately dispose of the used oil. Put the oil in a sealed container and take it to a recycling center. Do not throw the oil away into a garbage can or onto the ground.

Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2
This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

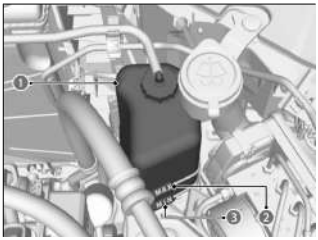
We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.
If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.
Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause hot coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.
Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

Genuine Honda engine coolant is a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water that can withstand freezing at temperatures as low as about −31°F (−35°C). If your vehicle is consistently subjected to temperatures below this, the concentration of antifreeze in the coolant should be increased. Consult a dealer for details.

Reserve Tank



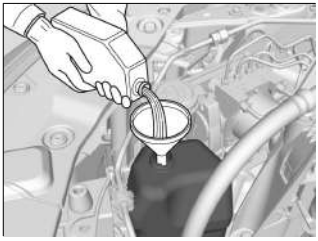
[1] **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**

[2] Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.

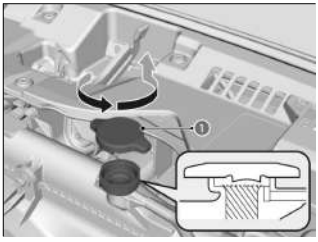
» If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

[3] Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

1. Reserve Tank
2. **MAX**
3. **MIN**



Radiator



❶ Radiator Cap

[1] **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
[2] Turn the radiator cap 1/8th turn counter-clockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
[3] Turn the radiator cap counter-clockwise to remove it.
[4] The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
[5] Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

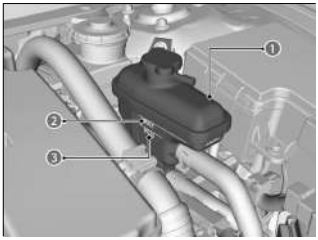
> ! Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any.
> Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

High Voltage System Coolant

When checking the coolant level, make sure to follow the procedures listed below. If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

> ! Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's coolant system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the motor components.

Coolant Tank



[1] Check the coolant level in the tank.
[2] If the coolant level has dropped below the **MIN** level, have your vehicle serviced at a dealer.
» Only a properly trained technician can refill the coolant and check the system for leaks.

❶ **Coolant Tank**
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

Transmission Fluid

Automatic Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HEVF-Type 1
Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

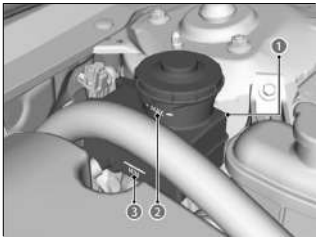
> ❗ Do not mix Honda Honda HEVF-Type 1 with other transmission fluids.
> Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HEVF-Type 1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.
> Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HEVF-Type 1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3
If the specified brake fluid is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid from a sealed container as a temporary replacement.
Using any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the longevity of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.
If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

> ❗ Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

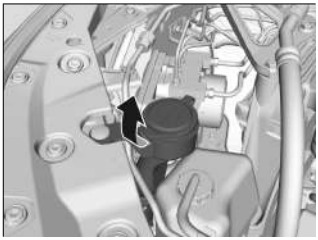
Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

1. **Reserve Tank**
2. **MAX**
3. **MIN**

Refilling Window Washer Fluid



If the level is low, add washer fluid.

▼ Canadian models

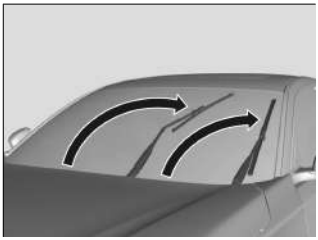
If the washer fluid is low, a message appears on the driver information interface.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

> **!** Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir.
> Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump.
> Use only commercially available windshield washer fluid.
> Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale buildup.

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades

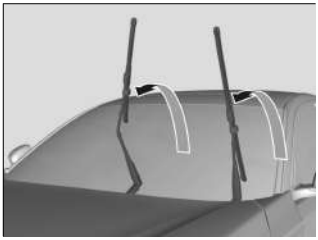
Lifting the Wiper Arms



[1] Set the power mode to ON, then to VEHICLE OFF.

[2] Within 10 seconds of setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, hold the wiper switch in the **MIST** position for more than two seconds.

» Both wiper arms are set to the maintenance position as shown in the image.

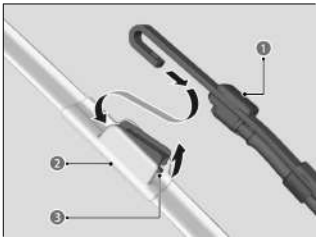


[3] Lift both wiper arms.

- **When lifting the wiper arms, always follow the instructions to move them into the maintenance position.**
  The wiper arms may be damaged if they are moved manually.

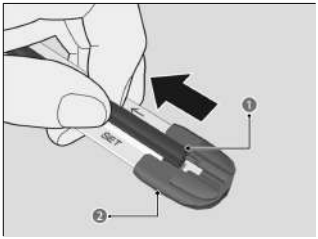
Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.



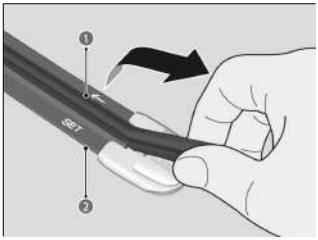
[1] Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

1 Wiper Arm
2 Holder
3 Tab

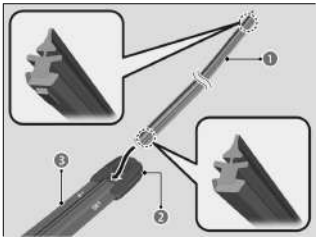


❶ Wiper Blade
❷ End cap at the bottom

[2] Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.



❶ Wiper Blade
❷ Holder



❶ Wiper Blade
❷ Cap
❸ Holder

[3] Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
[4] Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
[5] Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
[6] Lower both wiper arms.
[7] Set the power mode to ON, then set the wiper switch to the **MIST** position once.
» The wiper arms return to the standard position.

- Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windshield, as it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windshield.

Checking and Maintaining Tires

Checking Tires

Have a dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tires and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

- Measure the air pressure when tires are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.
- If checked when hot, tire pressure can be as much as 4 – 6 psi (30 – 40 kPa, 0.3 – 0.4 kgf/cm^2) higher than if checked when cold.
- Whenever tire pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the TPMS*.

⚠ WARNING

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.
Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

High speed driving

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 99 mph or 160 km/h), adjust the cold tire pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat buildup and sudden tire failure.

▼ Models with 225/50R17 tires

Tire Size	225/50R17 94V
Pressure	Front: 36 psi (250 kPa, 2.5 kgf/cm^2) Rear: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2)

▼ Models with 235/40R19 tires

Tire Size	235/40R19 96V
Pressure	Front: 38 psi (260 kPa, 2.6 kgf/cm^2) Rear: 36 psi (250 kPa, 2.5 kgf/cm^2)

Tire Requirements for Safe Driving

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

*: Not available on all models

- Tires are the correct size and type.
- The ground beneath the tires is in good condition.
- The tire pressure is correct.
- The tires do not have any wear, scratches, cracks, or foreign objects.

Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tires provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label or specifications page for the specified pressure.
Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.
Overinflated tires make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.
Every day before you drive, look at each of the tires. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tire gauge.
At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tires. Even tires in good condition can lose 1-2 psi (10-20 kPa, 0.1-0.2 kgf/cm2) per month.

Inspection guidelines

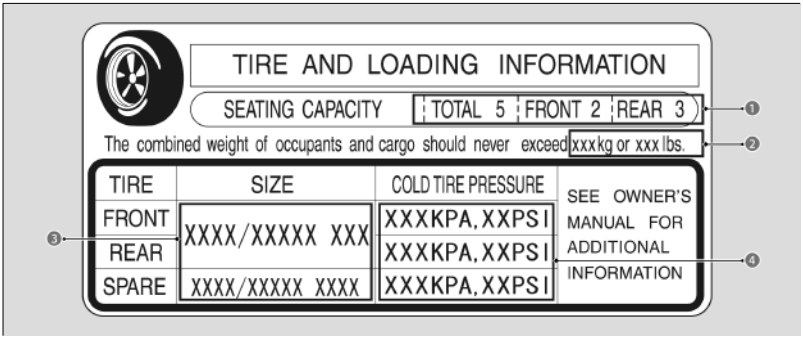
Every time you check inflation, also examine the tires and valve stems.
Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tire if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

Tire and Loading Information Label

The label attached to the driver's doorjamb provides necessary tire and loading information.

Label Example

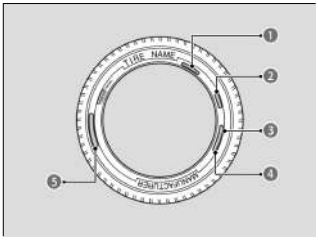


The tire and loading information label attached to the driver's doorjamb contains:

❶ The number of people your vehicle can carry.
❷ The total weight your vehicle can carry. Do not exceed this weight.
❸ The original sizes for the front and rear tires (and the spare, if equipped).
❹ The proper cold tire pressures for the front and rear tires (and the spare, if equipped).

Tire Labeling

Example



❶ Tire Size
❷ Tire Identification Number (TIN)
❸ Maximum Tire Load
❹ Maximum Tire Pressure
❺ Tire Size

The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described as shown.

Tire Sizes

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size. Following is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.

P235/60 R18 102T

P: Vehicle type (P indicates passenger vehicle).
235: Tire width in millimeters.
60: Aspect ratio (the tire's section height as a percentage of its width).
R: Tire construction code (R indicates radial).
18: Rim diameter in inches.
102: Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).
T: Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).

Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the examples in the side column. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.
There are two different formats that the TIN may be listed in.

▼ Format A

DOT B97R FW6X 2209

DOT: This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.
B97R: Manufacturer's identification mark.
FW6X: Tire type code.
2209: Date of manufacture (22: Week, 09: Year).

▼ Format B

DOT 1A3 OFBEKP 1522

DOT: This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.
1A3: PLANT CODE
OFBEKP: MANUFACTURER'S CODE
1522: DATE CODE (15: Week, 22: Year)

Glossary of Tire Terminology

Cold Tire Pressure– The tire air pressure when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).
Load Rating– Means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.
Maximum Inflation Pressure– The maximum tire air pressure that the tire can hold.

Maximum Load Rating– Means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.
Recommended Inflation Pressure– The cold tire inflation pressure recommended by the manufacturer.
Treadwear Indicators (TWI)– Means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread.

DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:
Treadwear 200
Traction AA
Temperature A
All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

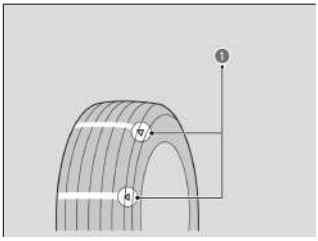
Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.
Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Wear Indicators



❶ Wear Indicator

The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1/16 inch (about 1.6 mm) shallower than elsewhere on the tire. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tire.
Worn out tires have poor traction on wet roads.

Tire Service Life

The life of your tires is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tires are not in use).
In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tires reach five years old. All tires should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Tire and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tires with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's sidewall). Using tires of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) system to work incorrectly.
It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tires in pairs.
Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

⚠ WARNING

Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability.
This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.
Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.

Winter Tires

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount all season marked **M+S** tires, snow tires, or tire chains*; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.
Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.
Use tire chains*, snow tires, or all season tires when necessary or according to the law.
When mounting, refer to the following points.
If your vehicle is equipped with summer tires, be aware that these tires are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

For winter tires

For winter tires:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tires.
- Mount the tires to all four wheels.

For tire chains

For tire chains:

- Install them on the front tires only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

▼ Model with 225/50R17 tire

Cable-type: SCC RADIAL CHAIN SC1036

When tire chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

▼ Models with 235/40R19 tire

Not recommended to use any type of chain or cable

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed. Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tire chains.

*: Not available on all models

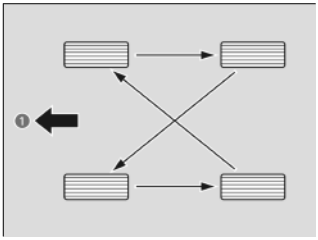
> **!** Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Tire Rotation

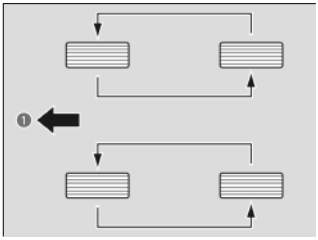
Rotating tires according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tire life.

Tires without rotation marks



1 Front

Tires with rotation marks



1 Front

Wheel nut torque for the tires that come standard-equipped with your vehicle is as follows.

Wheel nut torque:
80 lbf·ft (108 N·m, 11 kgf·m)

Whenever tires are rotated, you must calibrate the TPMS*.

System Calibration ▶P.138

*: Not available on all models

12-Volt Battery

Maintaining 12-Volt Battery

After reconnecting the 12-volt battery: if various indicators come on and the message on the left is displayed on the driver information interface, drive a short distance at a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h) or higher. If the indicator does not go off, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

When you find corrosion, clean the 12-volt battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution.
Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the 12-volt battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.
When replacing the 12-volt battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.
Consult a dealer for more information.

⚠ WARNING

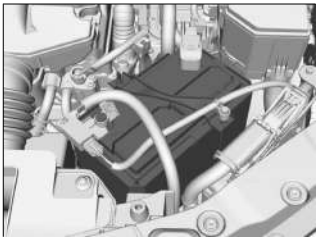
The 12-volt battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.
A spark or flame can cause the 12-volt battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.
When conducting any 12-volt battery maintenance, wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do it.

WARNING: Battery post, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds.
Wash your hands after handling.

The 12-volt battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop.
Using a 12-volt battery other than this specified type may shorten the battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type and size. Ask a dealer for more details.

Checking the 12-Volt Battery

The condition of the 12-volt battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the 12-volt battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
Check the 12-volt battery terminals for corrosion monthly.



If your vehicle's 12-volt battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The audio system is disabled.
- The clock resets.

▼ Canadian models

- The immobilizer system needs to be reset.
  Immobilizer System ▶P.55

Charging the 12-Volt Battery

Disconnect both 12-volt battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system.
Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.
If the battery cable is removed while a system update is being performed, the electrical system can be permanently damaged. Only remove the battery cable when a system update is not being performed.

Climate Control System Maintenance

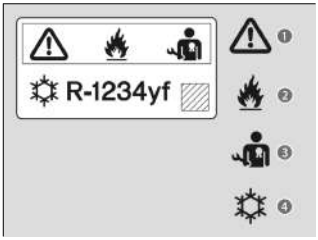
Air Conditioning

To ensure proper and safe operation, the Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE J2845) recommends that the refrigerant system only be serviced by trained and certified technicians.
Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.
New replacement mobile air conditioning evaporators must be certified (and labeled) as meeting SAE Standard J2842.
Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.
The air conditioner label is found under the hood:

Label Locations ►P.53

About Specifications ►P.387

▼ Canadian models



❶ **Caution**
❷ **Flammable Refrigerant**
❸ **Requires Registered Technician to Service**
❹ **Air Conditioning System**

> **!** Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment.
> To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

The climate control system is equipped with a dust and pollen filter that collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air. The Maintenance Minder™ messages will let you know when to replace the filter.
We recommend that you replace the dust and pollen filter sooner when using your vehicle in areas with high concentrations of dust.

Cleaning

Interior Care

Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt. Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.
Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone-based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.
Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.
If a silicone-based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discoloration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or gasoline.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin-based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Cleaning seat belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.

Cleaning the window

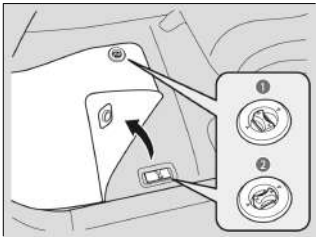
Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of the electrical components around the rearview mirror.

Floor mats

Example



The driver's floor mat hooks over floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward.
Do not put any additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

❶ Unlock
❷ Lock

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors.
Position any rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

Washing the vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.

- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap is stuck to painted surfaces.

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.
If water and any chemicals are on the brakes when your vehicle is being washed, drive a short distance and apply the brakes several times before parking. Parking while brakes are wet may cause them to be stuck by rust.

- Lock the doors when washing the vehicle. Do not spray water onto the fuel fill door directly. A high-pressure spray may cause it to open.

Do not spray water onto the capless unit when the fuel fill door is open. It can cause damage to the fuel system or engine.

- If you need to lift the wiper arms away from the windshield, first set the wiper arms to the maintenance position.

Lifting the Wiper Arms ▶P.331

Using high pressure cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.
- Do not spray water directly onto the camera or the area around it. Water may enter the lens and cause the camera to malfunction.
- Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the bumpers and other resin-coated parts

If you get gasoline, oil, engine coolant, or 12-volt battery fluid on resin-coated parts, they may stain or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

- Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

Cleaning the window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Maintaining aluminum wheels

Aluminum is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminum alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their luster or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

Handling the Unexpected

Tools
Types of Tools ····· 350

When a Lightbulb Goes Out
About the Vehicle's LED Exterior Lighting ····· 351

Remote Transmitter Care
Replacing the Remote Battery ····· 352

If a Tire Goes Flat
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire ····· 354

Handling of the jack
How to Set Up the Jack ····· 363

Power System Won't Start
Checking the Procedure ····· 364
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak ····· 365
Emergency Power System Off ····· 365
Emergency Power System On ····· 365

If the 12-volt Battery Is Dead
Jump Starting Procedure ····· 367
What to Do After the Power System Starts ····· 368

Shift Lever Does Not Move
Releasing the Lock ····· 369

Overheating
How to Handle Overheating ····· 370

When a Warning Appears
If the **Engine oil pressure low.** Warning Appears ····· 372
If the **Limited stopping power** Warning Appears ····· 373

Fuses
Checking Fuses ····· 374
Interior Fuse Box ····· 376
Inspecting and Changing Fuses ····· 378

Emergency Towing
About Towing ····· 380

If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door
What to Do If Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door ····· 381

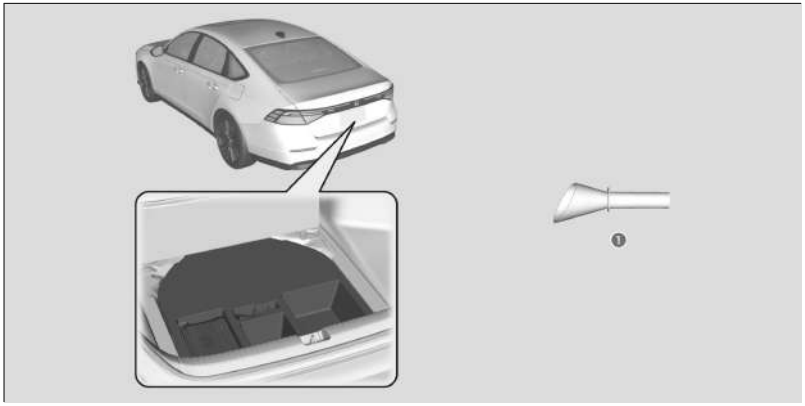
If You Cannot Open the Trunk
What to Do If Unable to Open the Trunk ····· 382

Refueling
Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container ····· 383

Emergency Call (eCall)
Automatic Emergency Call ····· 384
Manual Emergency Call ····· 385

Tools

Types of Tools



❶ **Funnel**

The tools are stored in the trunk.

When a Lightbulb Goes Out

About the Vehicle's LED Exterior Lighting

The following lights are LED lights. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace them.

- Headlights
- Front Turn Signal Lights
- Parking/Daytime Running Lights
- Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights*
- Front Side Marker Lights
- Brake Lights
- Taillights
- High-Mount Brake Light
- Rear Turn Signal Lights
- Rear Side Marker/Taillights
- Back-Up Lights
- Rear License Plate Light

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the trunk, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

*: Not available on all models

Remote Transmitter Care

Replacing the Remote Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery. Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

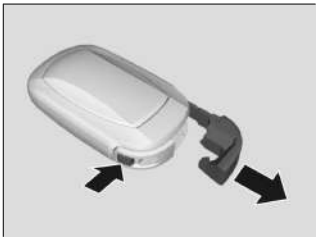
⚠ WARNING

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed.
Keep new and used batteries away from children.
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

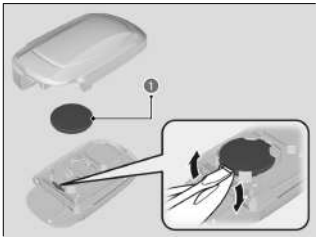
Keyless Remote



[1] Remove the built-in key.

[2] With the buttons facing down, remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the slot with the key grip.

[3] Remove the battery by prying on the edge with flat-tip screwdriver. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



1 Battery

Battery type: CR2032

- Wrap a key grip with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
- Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

If a Tire Goes Flat

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tire

If the tire has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tire only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tire repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

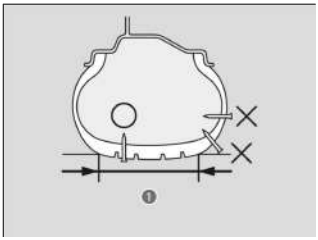
How to Park Your Vehicle

If a tire goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place.

[1] Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
[2] Put the transmission into **P**.
[3] Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or roadside assistance to have the vehicle towed.

- The tire sealant has expired.
- More than one tire is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 3/16 inch (4 mm).
- The tire side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the tire area.
- Damage has been caused by driving with the tire extremely under inflated.
- The tire bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.



1 Contact Area

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tire.
If you remove it from the tire, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

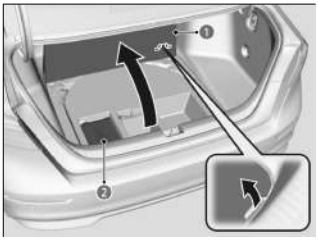
Do not continue driving with the temporarily repaired tire.
Do not use the temporary repairs for any purpose other than moving your vehicle to the nearest service station to receive professional repairs.

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire

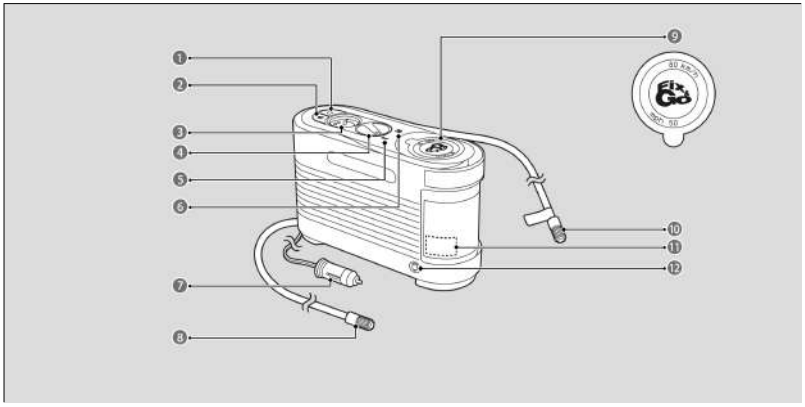
When using the compressor, please note the following points.

- Avoid getting water on it during rain.
- Do not place the product directly on a sandy or dusty area before using it, as inhaling dust may cause a malfunction.
- Do not lubricate with oil or lubricant.
- Never disassemble or modify the product.
- Do not subject the compressor to any impacts. This may cause a malfunction.

Taking out the Tire Repair Kit



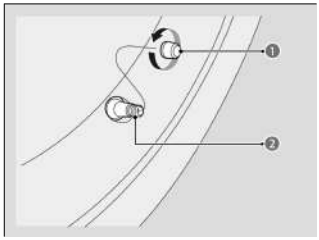
[1] Open the trunk floor lid (❶).
[2] Take the kit (❷) out of the case.
[3] Place the kit face up on flat ground near the flat tire and away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.



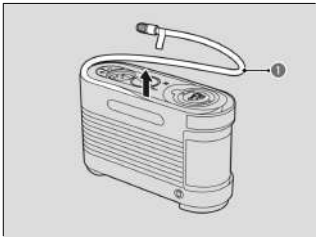
1 Inflator Switch
2 Air Release Button
3 Pressure Gauge
4 Selector Knob
5 AIR Side
6 REPAIR Side
7 Power Plug
8 Air Hose
9 Speed Restriction Label
10 Sealant Hose
11 Tire Sealant Expiration Date
12 Bottle Release Button

Speed restriction label is applied on the temporary tire repair kit.

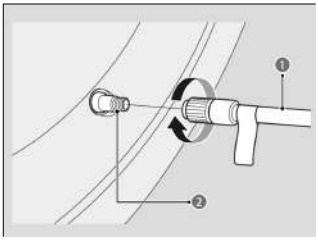
Injecting Sealant and Air



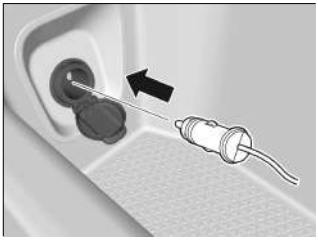
[1] Remove the valve cap (1) from the tire valve stem (2).



[2] Remove the sealant hose (❶) from the kit.



[3] Attach the sealant hose (❶) onto the tire valve stem (❷). Screw it until it is tight.



[4] Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.

» Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.

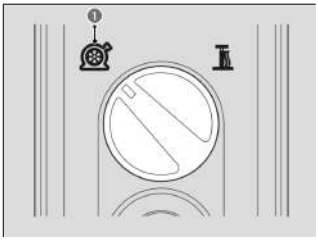
Accessory Power Socket ►P.145

[5] Turn the power system on.

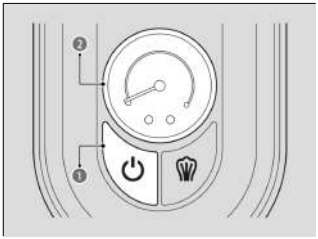
Turn on Power System ►P.98

» Keep the power system on while injecting sealant and air.

Carbon Monoxide Gas ►P.26



[6] Turn the selector knob to (❶).



[7] Press the inflator switch (❶) to turn on the kit.

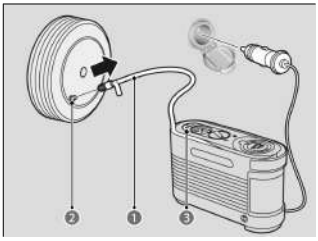
» The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tire.

» When the sealant injection is complete, continue to add air.

[8] After the air pressure reaches the specified pressure, turn off the kit.

» To check the pressure, occasionally turn off the compressor and read the pressure gauge (❷).

» Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.



[9] Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.

[10] Unscrew the sealant hose (❶) from the tire valve stem (❷). Reinstall the valve cap.

[11] Press the air release button (❸) until the gauge returns to 0 psi (0 kPa).

[12] Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Keep the power system on while injecting sealant and air.

- Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tire is inflated with air. This is normal.
- To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.
- If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tire may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.
- See a Honda dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.

Do not operate the temporary tire repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

> ! The sealant can permanently stain clothing and other materials.
> Be careful during handling and wipe away any spills immediately.

⚠ WARNING

Tire sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.
If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.
For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.
Breathing this colorless, odorless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death.
Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

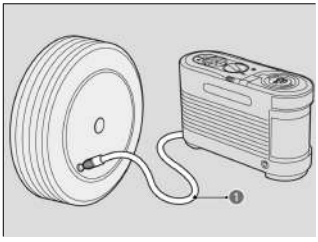
Distributing the Sealant in the Tire

[1] Apply the speed restriction label (1) to the location as shown.

[2] Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.

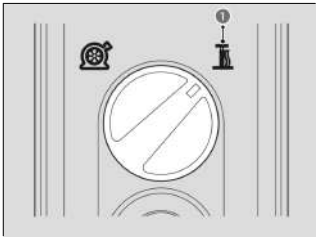
» Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

[3] Stop the vehicle in a safe place.



[4] Recheck the air pressure using the air hose (1) on the compressor.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tire ▶P.361



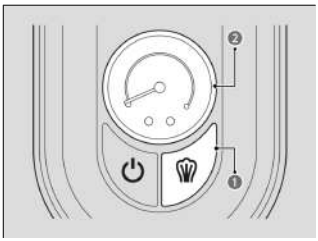
[5] Turn the selector knob to (❶).

» Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tire ▶P.361

[6] If the air pressure is

- Less than 19 psi (130kPa):
  Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.
  About Towing ▶P.380
- Specified pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.) or more:
  Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station, whichever is sooner. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h). If you have not reached a service station, stop and check the tire pressure.
  » If the air pressure does not go down after the 10 minute driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.
- Greater than 130 kPa (19 psi), but less than specified pressure:
  Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tire until the tire pressure reaches specified pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.).
  Inflating an Under-inflated Tire ▶P.361
  Then, drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station, whichever is sooner. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h). If you have not reached a service station, stop and check the tire pressure.
  » You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is not within the range indicated for the tire size.



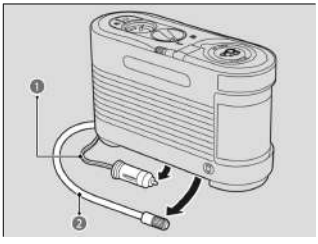
[7] Unscrew the air hose from the tire valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.

[8] Press the air release button (❶) until the pressure gauge (❷) returns to 0 psi (0 kPa).

[9] Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tire

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tire.



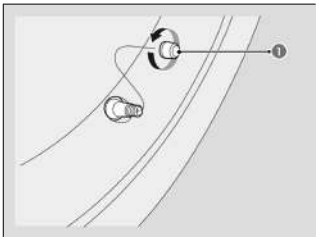
[1] Open the trunk floor lid.

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tire ►P.355

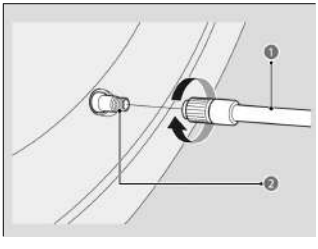
[2] Take the kit out of the case.

[3] Place the kit face up on flat ground near the tire to be inflated, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

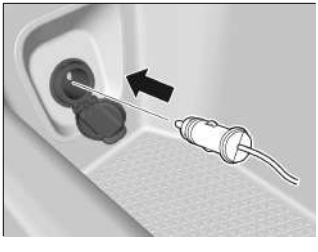
[4] Remove the power plug (❶) and air hose (❷) from the kit.



[5] Remove the valve cap (❶).



[6] Attach the air hose (❶) onto the tire valve stem (❷). Screw it until it is tight.



[7] Plug in the kit to the accessory power socket.

» Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.

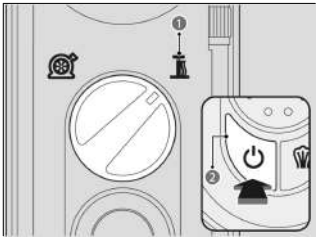
Accessory Power Socket ►P.145

[8] Turn the power system on.

Turn on Power System ►P.98

» Keep the power system on while injecting sealant and air.

Carbon Monoxide Gas ►P.26



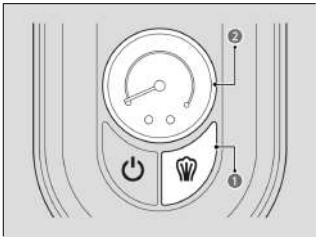
[9] Turn the selector knob to (❶).

[10] Press the inflator switch (❷) to turn on the kit.

» The compressor starts to inject air into the tire.

[11] Inflate the tire to the specified pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.).

❶ AIR Side



[12] Turn off the kit.

» Check the pressure gauge (❶) on the air compressor.

» If overinflated, press the air release button (❷).

[13] Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.

[14] Unscrew the air hose from the tire valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.

[15] Press the air release button until the gauge returns to 0 psi (0 kPa).

[16] Repackage and properly stow the kit.

- Keep the power system on while injecting air.
- Do not operate the temporary tire repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Do not plug any other electronic devices into other accessory power socket.

Accessory Power Socket ►P.145

Do not operate the temporary tire repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes.

The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

⚠ WARNING

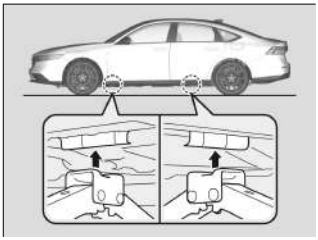
Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colorless, odorless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Handling of the jack

How to Set Up the Jack



Your vehicle has jacking points as shown.
When replacing your tires, consult a dealer.

Power System Won’t Start

Checking the Procedure

If the power system won’t start, check the following items and take appropriate action.

Check if the related indicator or driver information interface messages come on.

- The **Temperature is too cold for vehicle to operate** message appears.
  - 》 You must wait for an increase in the ambient temperature.
  - 》 Have the vehicle towed to a warmer location.

About Towing a Trailer ►P.95

- The **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** message appears.
  - 》 Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range.

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak ►P.365

Check the shift position.

- The transmission is not in P.
  - 》 Put the transmission into P.

Check the power system starting procedure.

- Follow the instructions, and try to start the power system again.

Turn on Power System ►P.98

Check the immobilizer system indicator.

- When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the power system cannot be turned on.

Immobilizer System ►P.55

Indicator List ►P.285

Check the fuses.

- Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses ►P.378

If you cannot turn on the power system after checking all the items above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

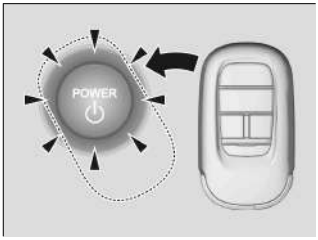
If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

Jump Starting Procedure ►P.367

Depending on the situation, it may be possible to temporarily turn the power system on using the emergency starting procedure.

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

Follow the steps below if the **POWER** button does not turn on the power or start the engine.



[1] Press the **POWER** button.
[2] Touch the center of the **POWER** button with the keyless remote within 30 seconds. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
[3] Depress and hold the brake pedal, then press the **POWER** button within 10 seconds.
» If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Emergency Power System Off

The **POWER** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must turn the power system off, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **POWER** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **POWER** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock.

> ! If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Emergency Power System On

If the power system cannot be turned on using the normal starting procedure, you may be able to turn it on using the emergency starting procedure below.
Do not use this procedure if it is not an emergency.

[1] Make sure the parking brake is applied.
[2] Check that the transmission is in **P**, then set the power mode to ACCESSORY.
[3] Firmly depress the brake pedal, then press and hold the **POWER** button for at least 15 seconds.

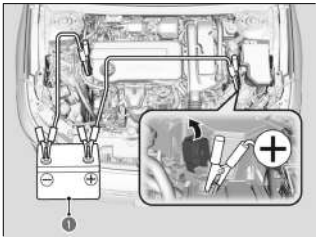
This should be considered a system malfunction even if you are able to turn the power system on using the above procedure.
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
Refer to the following if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.

Releasing the Lock ▶P.369

If the 12-volt Battery Is Dead

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the power system, then open the hood.



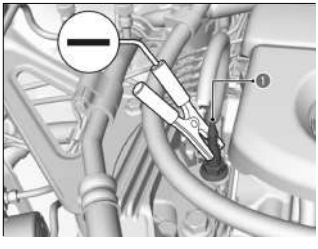
[1] Open the cover on the positive ⊕ terminal.

[2] Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.

[3] Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery (❶) ⊕ terminal.

- Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
- When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.

[4] Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.



[5] Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the stud bolt (❶) as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.

[6] If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its RPM slightly.

[7] Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

⚠ WARNING

A 12-volt battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.
Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.

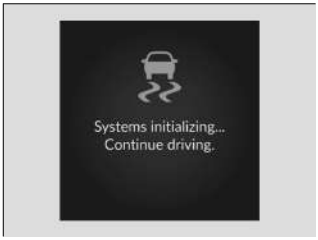
! Securely attach the jumper cables' clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates.
Be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

What to Do After the Power System Starts

Once your vehicle's power system has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

[1] Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
[2] Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
[3] Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
[4] Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

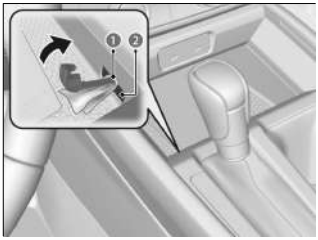


After re-connecting the 12-volt battery: if various indicators come on and the message on the left is displayed on the driver information interface, drive a short distance at more than 12 mph (20km/h). If the indicator does not go off, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

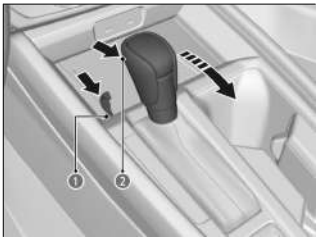
Shift Lever Does Not Move

Releasing the Lock

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.



[1] Set the parking brake.
[2] Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
[3] Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.
[4] Wrap a cloth around the tip of the built-in key. Put it into the shift lock release slot (❶) as shown in the image, and remove the cover (❷).



[5] Insert the key into the shift lock release slot (❶).
[6] While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button (❷), and place the shift lever into N.
  » The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Overheating

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The **Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- The **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.
Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause hot coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.
Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

Continuing to drive with the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

If the **Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced.** appears on the driver information interface, your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.

The Power system temperature high. Power may be reduced. Message Appears on the Driver Information Interface

[1] Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.

» Set the parking brake, and put the transmission into **P**. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

[2] Keep the power mode in ON, and wait until the message disappears.

» If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

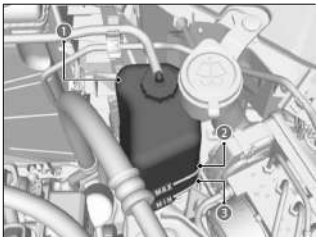
The Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool. Message Appears on the Driver Information Interface

[1] Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.

[2] Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

» No steam or spray present: Keep the power system on and open the hood.

» Steam or spray is present: Turn off the power system and wait until it subsides. Then, open the hood.



❶ **Reserve Tank**
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

[3] Check that the cooling fan is operating and turn the power system off once the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message disappears.

» If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately turn the power system off.

[4] Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.

» If the coolant level in the engine coolant reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

» If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

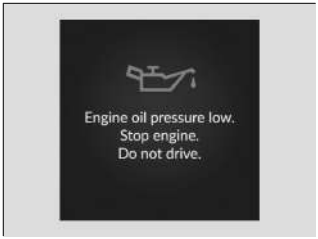
[5] Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, turn the power system on. If the message does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

- If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

When a Warning Appears

If the Engine oil pressure low. Warning Appears



Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

Reasons for the warning to appear

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

What to do as soon as the warning appears

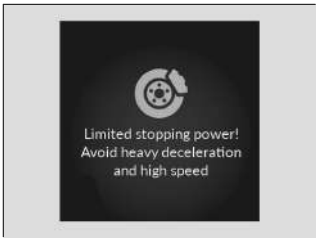
[1] Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
[2] If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

What to do after parking the vehicle

[1] Turn the power system off and let the engine sit for approximately three minutes.
[2] Open the hood and check the oil level.
» Add oil as necessary.
Oil Check ▶P.323

[3] Start the engine and check the **Engine oil pressure low** warning
» The warning disappears: Start driving again.
» The warning does not disappear within 10 seconds: Immediately turn the power system off and contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Limited stopping power Warning Appears



Reasons for the warning to appear

Appears when braking ability is reduced.

What to do as soon as the warning appears

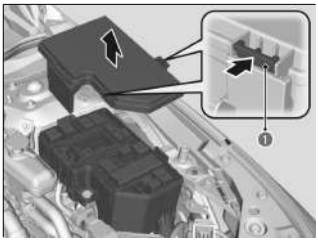
Slow down and drive carefully. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Fuses

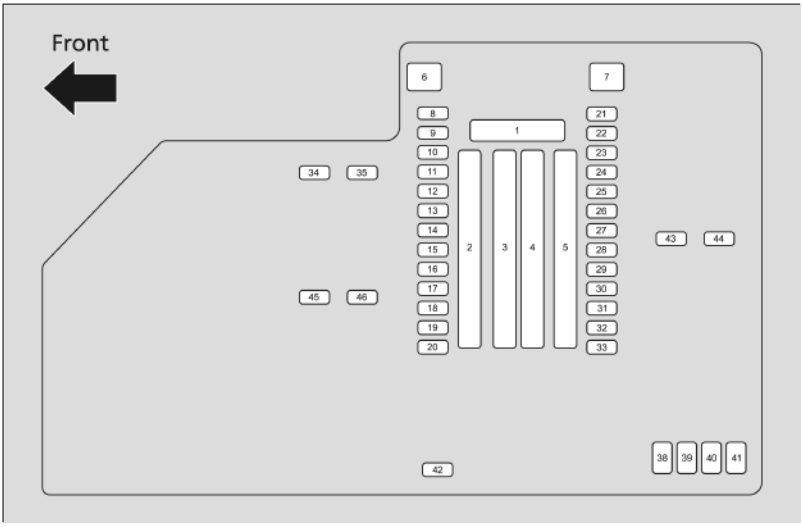
Checking Fuses

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box



Located near the 12-volt battery. Push the tabs (❶) to open the box.
Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover or the image below.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number.



Circuit Protected and Fuse Rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1	—	BATTERY	175 A
2	—	—	30 A
	—	—	40 A
	—	F/BOX OPTION	60 A
	—	A/C PTC1	(40 A)
	—	F/BOX OPTION2	60 A
	—	—	60 A
	—	F/BOX MAIN	60 A
3	—	AUDIO AMP	(30 A)
	—	—	30 A
	—	A/C PTC3	(40 A)
	—	—	30 A
	—	—	50 A
	—	HTR MTR	40 A
	—	RR DEFROSTER	40 A
4	—	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
	—	ABS/VSA MTR	40 A
	—	ENG WATER PUMP	40 A
	—	ESB	40 A
	—	IG MAIN	30 A
	—	—	40 A
	—	R/M2	30 A
5	—	SUB FUSE	30 A
	—	WIPER	30 A
	—	EPS	70 A
	—	R/M1	30 A
	—	RFC	60 A
	—	—	(30 A)
	—	F/BOX MAIN2	60 A
6	—	—	—
7	—	IG MAIN2	30 A
8	—	—	—
9	—	BACK UP	15 A

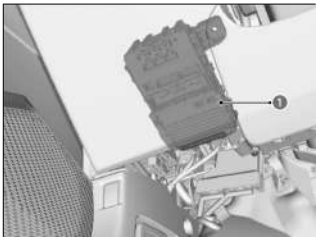
		Circuit Protected	Amps
10	—	WASHER	15 A
11	—	—	—
12	—	RR H/SEAT*	(20 A)
13	—	—	—
14	—	RFC RLY CL+	10 A
15	—	SHUTTER GRILLE	(10 A)
16	—	—	—
17	—	—	—
18	—	HORN	10 A
19	—	AUDIO SUB*	(15 A)
20	—	AUDIO	7.5 A
21	—	EVTC	20 A
22	—	DBW	15 A
23	—	HAZARD	15 A
24	—	BACKUP FI-ECU	10 A
25	—	IGP	15 A
26	—	—	—
27	—	LCM L	20 A
28	—	INJ	20 A
29	—	STOP	10 A
30	—	LCM R	20 A
31	—	IG COIL	15 A
32	—	ICM	10 A
33	—	PCU EWP	10 A
34	—	—	—
35	—	—	—
38	—	—	—
39	—	IGA	10 A
40	—	IGB	10 A
41	—	—	—
42	—	MON2	7.5 A
43	—	—	—
44	—	—	—

*: Not available on all models

		Circuit Protected	Amps
45	—	IGPS (LAF)	10 A

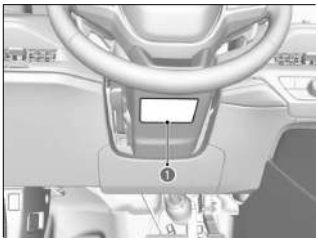
		Circuit Protected	Amps
46	—	—	—

Interior Fuse Box

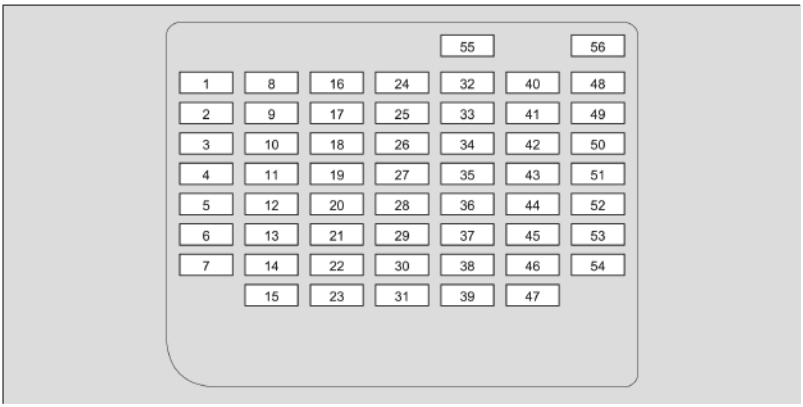


Located under the dashboard.
Fuse locations are shown on the label under the steering column or the image below.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number.

❶ Main Fuse Box



❶ Fuse Label



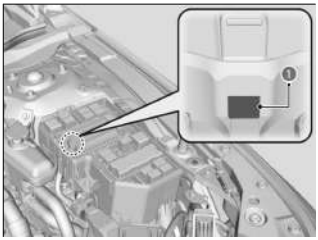
Circuit Protected and Fuse Rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1	—	P/W DR	20 A
2	—	P/W AS	20 A
3	—	P/W RR R	20 A
4	—	P/W RR L	20 A
5	—	OPTION	10 A
6	—	SRS	10 A
7	—	TRUNK LOCK ACT	10 A
8	—	—	—
9	—	FR ACC SOCKET	20 A
10	—	DOOR LOCK	20 A
11	—	METER	10 A
12	—	—	(10 A)
13	—	OPTION2	10 A
14	—	MISS SOL	10 A
15	—	DR DOOR UNLOCK	(10 A)
16	—	—	—
17	—	—	—
18	—	—	—
19	—	—	—
20	—	CGW	10 A
21	—	—	—
22	—	SMART	10 A
23	—	DR DOOR LOCK	(10 A)
24	—	—	—
25	—	—	—
26	—	SRS	10 A
27	—	ACG	10 A
28	—	VSA/ABS	10 A

		Circuit Protected	Amps
29	—	FUEL PUMP	20 A
30	—	L SIDE DOOR UNLOCK	10 A
31	—	R SIDE DOOR UNLOCK	10 A
32	—	SUN ROOF	(20 A)
33	—	CTR DISP	(7.5 A)
34	—	USB CHG	10 A
35	—	—	—
36	—	—	—
37	—	—	—
38	—	IGA2 (IGHOLD3)	(20 A)
39	—	R SIDE DOOR LOCK	10 A
40	—	DR P/SEAT SLIDE	(20 A)
41	—	DR P/SEAT REC	(20 A)
42	—	OPTION3	(10 A)
43	—	A/C	10 A
44	—	DRL	10 A
45	—	ACC	10 A
46	—	ACC KEY LOCK	10 A
47	—	L SIDE DOOR LOCK	10 A
48	—	FR H/SEAT*	(20 A)
49	—	AS P/SEAT REC*	(20 A)
50	—	P/LUMBAR DR	(10 A)
51	—	—	—
52	—	—	—
53	—	AS P/SEAT SLIDE*	(20 A)
54	—	OPTION1	10 A
55	—	—	—
56	—	—	—

*: Not available on all models

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



❶ Hole

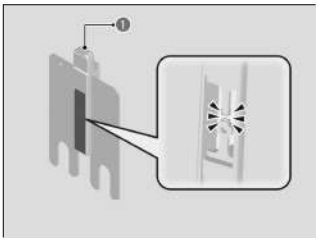
[1] Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Turn headlights and all accessories off.

[2] Remove the fuse box cover.

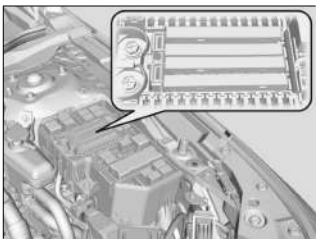
[3] Check the main fuse in the engine compartment fuse box.

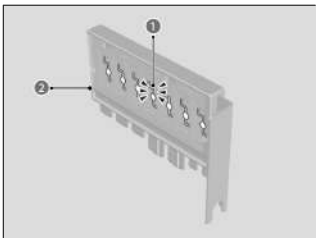
» Look at the fuse through the hole.

» If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.



❶ Main Fuse



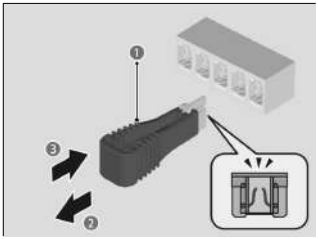


❶ Blown Fuse
❷ Combined Fuse

[4] Check the combined fuses in the engine compartment fuse box.

» Look into the space between the fuses.

» If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.



[5] Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.

» If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

❶ **Fuse Puller**
❷ **Remove**
❸ **Replace**

- Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.
- Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.
- Replace with a fuse of the same specified amperage.

There is a fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse box cover.

Emergency Towing

About Towing

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

- Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.
- When having your vehicle towed with the front wheels lifted, make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flatbed equipment.

Parking Brake ▶P.104

> Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain.
> It is very dangerous because ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

> Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Flatbed Equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

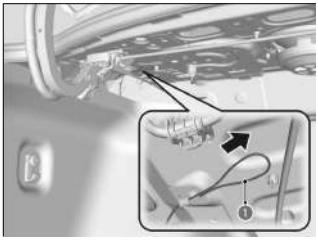
Wheel Lift Equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tires and lift them off the ground. The rear tires remain on the ground. This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.

If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

What to Do If Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

If you cannot unlock the fuel fill door, use the following procedure.



[1] Open the trunk.

[2] Pull the release cord (❶) as shown.

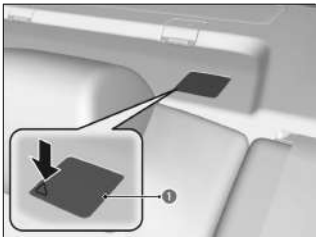
» Open the fuel fill door.

How to Refuel ►P.117

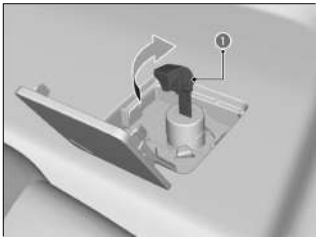
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

If You Cannot Open the Trunk

What to Do If Unable to Open the Trunk



[1] Push the lower left side of the cover (❶) to remove it.



[2] Remove the built-in key (❶) from the keyless remote.

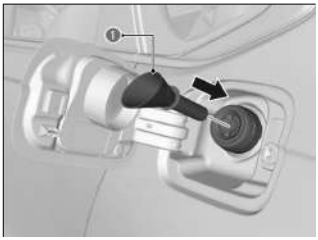
[3] Insert the key into the cylinder and turn it clockwise.

» The trunk unlocks and opens.

- Following up:
  After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

Refueling

Refueling From a Portable Fuel Container



[1] Turn off the power system.

[2] Open the fuel fill door.

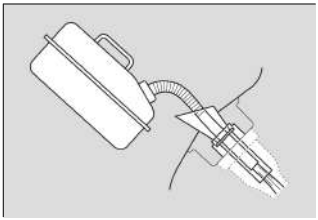
How to Refuel ►P.117

[3] Take the funnel (❶) out of the tool case in the trunk.

Types of Tools ►P.350

[4] Place the end of the funnel on the lower part of filler opening, then insert it slowly and fully.

» Make sure that the end of the funnel goes down along with the filler pipe.



[5] Fill the tank with fuel from the portable fuel container.

» Pour fuel carefully so you do not spill any.

[6] Remove the funnel from the filler neck.

» Wipe up any fuel from the funnel before storing it.

[7] Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

Do not insert the nozzle of a portable fuel container or any funnel other than the one provided with your vehicle. Doing so can damage the fuel system.
Do not try to pry open or push open the sealed fuel tank with foreign objects. This can damage the fuel system and its seal.
Make sure the fuel in the portable fuel container is gasoline before you refuel.

⚠ WARNING

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive.

You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Turn the power system off, and keep heat, sparks, and flames away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

Emergency Call (eCall)

Automatic Emergency Call

If your vehicle is involved in a collision, the vehicle will attempt to connect to an operator. Once a connection is established, your location information will be sent to an operator with whom you will be able to speak.

1 eCall Indicator

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.
When the power mode is set to ON, the eCall indicator lights up in green for 1 second, then in red for 1 second.
If the eCall system is working properly, the indicator will light up in green.

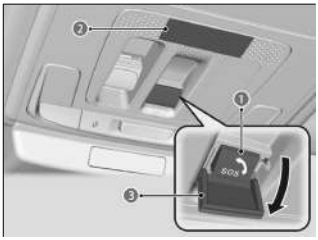
- Green: eCall system is ready.
- Blinking in green: eCall system is connected and making an eCall to an operator.
- Repeating a pattern of short flashes of the red light: The eCall system has failed to connect to an operator. The eCall indicator will continue this pattern for five seconds, then it will light up in green.

If the eCall system is disabled in the event of a critical system failure, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle:

- Red or blacked out: A problem with the eCall system has occurred. If the indicator stays red or blacked out even after you have restarted the vehicle, have the system check by a dealer.

> **!** Your vehicle may NOT be able to connect to an operator if:
> The 12-volt battery is too low.
> Your vehicle is in an area without adequate cellular coverage.
> There is a problem with the eCall system itself or its peripheral equipment such as the microphone or speakers.

Manual Emergency Call



If you need to make an emergency call, you can establish a connection manually. Press the **SOS** button (❶).
To cancel a call, press the **SOS** button for more than two seconds, before 10 seconds have elapsed since the **SOS** button was pressed.

❷ Microphone
❸ Cover

The **SOS** button is protected by a cover. Open the cover to gain access.
When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.

> ! Do NOT press the button while you are driving. If you need to contact an operator, park the vehicle in a safe place before you make a call.

> ! If the eCall system at first fails to connect to an operator, it will try again until a connection is established. However, if two minutes have elapsed since the first try was attempted, the system will no longer attempt to establish a connection.

> ! The **SOS** button does not cancel a call once the system is connected to an operator.

Vehicle Information

Specifications

About Specifications ····· 387

Identification Numbers

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number, and Transmission Number ····· 389

Devices that Emit Radio Waves

About Devices that Emit Radio Waves ····· 390

Reporting Safety Defects

About Reporting ····· 391

Emissions Testing

Testing of Readiness Codes ····· 393

Warranty Coverages

About Warranty Coverages ····· 394

Customer Service Information

Contacts ····· 396

Open Source License

Summary ····· 398

Specifications

About Specifications

Basic Information	
Model	ACCORD HYBRID
No. of Passengers:	
Front	2
Rear	3
Total	5
Weights：	
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb
Gross Axle Weight Rating(Front)	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb
Gross Axle Weight Rating(Rear)	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb

Air Conditioning	
Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)
Charge Quantity	15.3 – 17.1 oz (435 – 485 g)
Lubricant Type	ND-OIL11 (POE)
Quantity	7.32 – 8.24 cu-in (120 – 135 cm^3)

Engine Specifications		
Displacement	121.57 cu-in (1,993 cm^3)	
Spark Plugs	**NGK**	DILZKAR7G11Y

Fuel	
Type	Unleaded gasoline, pump octane number 87 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	12.81 US gal (48.5 L)

Washer Fluid	
Tank Capacity	U.S.: 1.6 US qt (1.5 L) Canada: 4.8 US qt (4.5 L)

Light Bulbs		
Headlights (Low Beam)		LED
Headlights (High Beam)		LED
Front Turn Signal Lights		LED
Parking/Daytime Running Lights		LED
Front Side Marker Lights		LED
Side Turn Signal Lights* **(on Door Mirrors)**		LED
Brake Lights		LED
Rear Side Marker/Taillights		LED
Taillights		LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights		LED
Back-Up Lights		LED
High-Mount Brake Light		LED
Rear License Plate Light		LED
Interior Lights	**Map Lights**	LED
	Ceiling Light	LED
	Trunk Light	LED
	Vanity Mirror Lights	LED
	Center Console Light	LED
	Ambient Lights	LED

Brake Fluid	
Specified	Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3

Transmission Fluid		
Specified	Honda HEVF-Type 1	
Capacity	**Change**	2.6 US qt (2.5 L)

Engine Oil		
Recommended	・Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 ・API service SN or higher grade 0W-20	
Capacity	**Change**	3.9 US qt (3.7 L)
	Change including filter	4.2 US qt (4.0 L)

*: Not available on all models

Engine Coolant	
Specified	Honda Long Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	1.49 US gal (5.63 L) (change including the remaining 0.19 US gal (0.71 L) in the reserve tank)

Tire		
Regular	**Size**	225/50R17 94V 235/40R19 96V
	Pressure psi(kPa[kgf/㎠])	Front: 33 (230 [2.3])*1 35 (240 [2.4])*2
		Rear: 32 (220 [2.2])
Wheel Size	**Regular**	17 x 7 1/2J*1 19 x 8 1/2J*2

For the tire size and pressure information, see the label on driver's doorjamb.

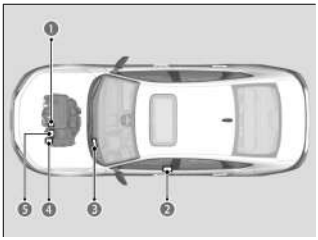
*1: Models with 225/50R17

*2: Models with 235/40R19

Identification Numbers

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number, and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, motor number, and transmission number are shown as follows.



1. Engine Number
2. Certification Label/Vehicle Identification Number
3. Vehicle Identification Number
4. Transmission Number
5. Motor Number

Devices that Emit Radio Waves

About Devices that Emit Radio Waves

Each radio frequency device installed in the vehicle conforms to the requirements and standards of the regulation listed below:

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada licence-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Reporting Safety Defects

About Reporting

In the U.S.
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-888-275-9171); go to *http://www.safercar.gov*; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

In Canada
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Honda Canada Inc. and you may also inform Transport Canada.

If Transport Canada receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may lead to a recall and remedy campaign. However, Transport Canada cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Honda Canada Inc.

To contact Transport Canada's Defect Investigations and Recalls Division, you may call 1-800-333-0510. For more information on reporting safety defects or about motor vehicle safety, go to *http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety*.

Emissions Testing

Testing of Readiness Codes

Your vehicle has readiness code as part of the onboard self diagnostic system. Some states use these codes for testing to verify whether your vehicle's emissions components are working properly.
The codes may not be read properly if testing is performed just after the 12-volt battery has gone dead or been disconnected.
To check the state of the readiness codes, set the power mode to ON, without turning the power system on. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for 15 to 20 seconds. If the malfunction indicator lamp then turns off, the readiness codes are set. If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks five to ten times, the readiness codes are not set.

If you are required to have your vehicle tested and the readiness codes are not set, prepare the vehicle for testing by doing the following:

[1] Fill the gas tank to approximately 3/4 full.
[2] Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes, reaching 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) at least once during this drive.
[3] Park the vehicle and leave the power system off for 6 hours or more.
[4] Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40°F and 95°F (4°C and 35°C).
[5] Turn the power system on.
[6] Select a nearby, lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph (80 to 97 km/h) for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in **D**. Do not use cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).
[7] Drive in city or suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.
[8] Park the vehicle and leave the power system off for 40 minutes.
[9] If this procedure is done immediately after losing 12-volt battery power, several additional hours of driving may be required to set all codes.

If a testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you may be requested to return at a later date to complete the test.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see a dealer.

Warranty Coverages

About Warranty Coverages

U.S. Owners

Your new vehicle is covered by these warranties:

New Vehicle Limited Warranty – covers your new vehicle, except for the emissions control systems and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance Warranty – these two warranties cover your vehicle's emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

Seat Belt Limited Warranty – a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Rust Perforation Limited Warranty – all exterior body panels are covered against rusting from the inside out for the specified time period, regardless of mileage.

Accessory Limited Warranty – Honda accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Replacement Parts Limited Warranty – covers all Honda replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.

Replacement 12-Volt Battery Limited Warranty – provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from your dealer.

Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty – provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the Honda warranty information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle's original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

Statement on Warranty Coverage for Aftermarket and Recycled Parts

The Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, 15 U.S.C. s.2301 et seq., makes it illegal for motor vehicle manufacturers to void a motor vehicle warranty or deny warranty coverage solely because an aftermarket or recycled part has been used to repair the vehicle or someone other than the authorized service provider performed service on the vehicle.
This provision does not apply to a new motor vehicle purchased solely for commercial or industrial use.
Under federal law, a manufacturer may deny warranty coverage and charge for repairs to a vehicle if it is discovered that an aftermarket or recycled part installed on the vehicle is defective or was installed incorrectly and caused damage to another part of the vehicle otherwise covered under warranty.
The Federal Trade Commission requires that a manufacturer demonstrate that an aftermarket or recycled part or service performed by a person other than an authorized service provider caused damage to another part of the vehicle otherwise covered under warranty before denying warranty coverage.
Additionally, federal law allows a manufacturer to void a motor vehicle warranty or deny warranty coverage if the manufacturer provides the article or service to consumers free of charge under the warranty or the manufacturer has secured a waiver from the Federal Trade Commission.

Canadian Owners

Please refer to the warranty manual that came with your vehicle.

EPA Contact Information

An owner may obtain further information concerning emission warranties or report violations of the terms of the emission warranties by contacting:

Director,
Light-Duty Vehicle Center,
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency,
Attention: Warranty Claim
2000 Traverwood Drive,
Ann Arbor, MI 48105;
complianceinfo@epa.gov

Customer Service Information

Contacts

Honda dealership personnel are trained professionals able to deal with any problems you may encounter with your vehicle. If, however, you are faced with a problem that they cannot resolve to your satisfaction, contact Honda Customer Service.

U.S. Owners
American Honda Motor Co., Inc.
Honda Automobile Customer Service
Mail Stop CHI-5
1919 Torrance Blvd.
Torrance, CA 90501-2746
Tel: 1 (800) 999-1009

Canadian Owners
Honda Canada Inc.
Customer Relations
180 Honda Boulevard
Markham, ON
L6C 0H9
Tel: 1-888-9-HONDA-9
Fax: 1-877-939-0909
E-mail: Honda_cr@ch.honda.com

In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands
Bella International
P.O. Box 190816
San Juan, PR 00919-0816
Tel: 1 (787) 620-7546

In Guam
Triple J Autogroup
157 S. Marine Corps Drive
Tamuning, GU 96913
Tel: (671) 648-2277

In Saipan, Commonwealth of the Northern Mariana Islands
Joeten Motor Company, Inc.
P.O. Box 500680
Saipan, MP 96950
Tel: (670) 234-5562

When you call or write, please give us the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number, and Transmission Number ►P.389

- Date of purchase
- Odometer reading of your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you

Open Source License

Summary

Meter Open Source License

QNX
The software embedded in this product includes open source software. Refer to the following website for details regarding the open source software.
https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/meter/honda/

TCU Open Source License

To obtain the source code that is contained in this product, under GPL, LGPL, MPL, and other open source licenses that have the obligation to disclose source code, and to access all referred license terms, copyright notices and other relevant documents, please visit https://opensource.lge.com. LG Electronics will also provide open source code to you on CD-ROM for a charge covering the cost of performing such distribution (such as the cost of media, shipping, and handling) upon email request to opensource@lge.com. This offer is valid to anyone in receipt of this information for a period of three years after our last shipment of this product.

Front Sensor Camera Open Source License

“The product includes code under public domain : https://www.jonolick.com/uploads/7/9/2/1/7921194/jo_jpeg.cpp
The code is based on https://github.com/jpeg-js/jpeg-js/blob/master/lib/encoder.js
Copyright (c) 2008, Adobe Systems Incorporated
All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:
* Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
* Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
* Neither the name of Adobe Systems Incorporated nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.
*/
/*

Index

Numbers

12.3" Color Touchscreen Basic Operations 169
12.3" Color Touchscreen Customized Features 202
12.3" Color Touchscreen Other Operations 190
12-volt Battery 343
Maintenance (Checking the 12-volt Battery) 343
Maintenance (Replacing) 343
12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator 288

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 110
Accessory Power Socket 145
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System 136
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 252
Indicator (Amber) 291
Indicator (White/Green) 253
Adding the Coolant 328
Additives
Coolant 326
Engine Oil 322
Washer 330
Additives, Engine Oil 322
Adjusting
Front Seats 71
Head Restraints 71
Rear Seats 73
Steering Wheel 68
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) 157
Changing the Mode 157
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows 130
Dust and Pollen Filter 345
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 157
Sensors 160
Synchronization Mode 159
Using Automatic Climate Control 158
Air Pressure 388
Airbags 40
Advanced Airbags 44
After a Collision 40
Airbag Care 51
Event Data Recorder 5
Front Airbags (SRS) 42
Indicator 49, 288
Knee Airbags 45
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator 50
Sensors 40
Side Airbags 47
Side Curtain Airbags 48
Ambient Meter 294
AM/FM Radio 178
Android Auto™ 195
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 110
Indicator 289
Apple CarPlay 193
Armrest
Front Seat 73
Rear Seat 73
AT&T Hotspot 192
Audio Playback via *Bluetooth*® Device 183
Audio Remote Controls 165
Audio System
12.3″ Color Touchscreen Basic Operations 169
12.3″ Color Touchscreen Customized Features 202
12.3″ Color Touchscreen Other Operations 190
About Audio Playback 180
Adjusting the Sound 175
Alexa Built-In 176
AM/FM Radio 178
Android Auto™ 195
Apple CarPlay 193
AT&T Hotspot 192
Audio/Information Screen 162
Bluetooth® Audio 183
Display Setup 176
General Information 212
Google built-in 184
Home Screen 170
Power Flow 187
Reactivating 161
Remote Controls 165
Selecting an Audio Source 163
System Status 163
System Updates 171
Theft Protection 161
USB Flash Drives 182, 212
USB Ports 164
Wired Connection 181
Audio/Information Screen 162
Authorized Manuals 1
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 65

Auto High-Beam 123
Indicator 123
Automatic Brake Hold 107
Indicator 109
Automatic Brake Hold System
Indicator 108
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 128
Automatic Lighting 120
Automatic Power Off 97
AUTO/EV/CHARGE Mode 132
Average Fuel Economy 299
Average Speed 299

B

Battery 16, 343
12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator 288
High Voltage 16
Maintenance (Checking the Battery) 344
Maintenance (Replacing) 352
Belts (Seat) 78
Beverage Holders 150
Blind Spot Information System 275
On and Off 276
Bluetooth® Audio 183
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® 197
Booster Seats (For Children) 38
Brake 104
Brake Assist System 104
Brake System
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 110
Automatic Brake Hold 107
Brake Assist System 104
Fluid 329
Foot Brake 104
Indicator (Amber) 288
Indicator (Red) 287
Parking Brake 104
Brightness 303
Built-in Key 58
Bulb Replacement 351
Back-Up Lights 351
Brake Lights 351
Fog Lights 351
Front Side Marker Lights 351
Front Turn Signal Lights 351
Headlights 351
High-Mount Brake Light 351
Parking/Daytime Running Lights 351
Rear License Plate Light 351
Rear Side Marker/Taillights 351
Rear Turn Signal Lights 351
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights (on Door Mirrors) 351
Taillights 351
Bulb Specifications 387

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas 26
Cargo Hooks 151
Carrying Cargo 24, 92
Center Console Box 145
Certification Label 389
Changing Bulbs 351
Changing the Power Mode 97
Child Safety 29
Childproof Door Locks 66
Emergency Trunk Opener 91
Child Seat 29
Booster Seats 38
Child Seat for Infants 30
Child Seat for Small Children 31
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 35
Larger Children 37
Rear-facing Child Seat 30
Selecting a Child Seat 32
Using a Tether 36
Childproof Door Locks 66
Cleaning the Exterior 347
Cleaning the Interior 346
Client Service Information 396
Climate Control System 157
Changing the Mode 157
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows 130
Dust and Pollen Filter 345
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 157
Sensors 160
Synchronization Mode 159
Using Automatic Climate Control 158
Clock 305
Adjusting the Clock 173
CMBS™ (Collision Mitigation Braking System™) 238
Coat Hook 149

Collision Mitigation Braking System™ (CMBS™) 238
On and Off 240
Coolant (Engine) 326
Adding to the Engine Coolant Reserve Tank 327
Adding to the Radiator 328
Overheating 370
Creeping (Transmission) 112
Cross Traffic Monitor 278
On and Off 279
Cup Holders 150
Current Mode for Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow, the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), and Traffic Jam Assist 295
Customize Display 305
Customized Features 202

D

Daytime Running Lights 123
Deceleration Paddle Selector 134
Defaulting All the Settings 211
Defrosting the Windshield and Windows 130
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 390
Dipstick (Engine Oil) 323
Directional Signals (Turn Signal) 120
Display Setup 176
Door Mirrors 85
Doors
Auto Door Locking 65
Auto Door Unlocking 66
Door and Trunk Open Message 24
Keys 54
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from Inside 64
DOT Tire Quality Grading 337
Drive Mode System 132
Driver Attention Monitor 300
Driver Information Interface 297, 305
Switching the Display 297
Driving
Braking 104
Turn on Power System 98
Driving Position Memory System 75
DRIVE MODE Switch 132
Dust and Pollen Filter 345

E

Elapsed Time 299
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator 290
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 136
Emergency 380
Emergency Trunk Opener 91
Emissions Testing (Readiness Codes) 393
Engine 389
Coolant 326
Oil 322
Remote Engine Start 99
Engine Coolant 326
Adding to the Engine Coolant Reserve Tank 327
Adding to the Radiator 328
Overheating 370
Engine oil pressure low Warning 372
Engine Oil 322
Adding 324
Checking 323
Engine oil pressure low Warning 372
Recommended Engine Oil 322
EV Indicator 18
Exhaust Gas Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) 26
Exterior Mirrors 85

F

Filters
Dust and Pollen 345
Oil 324
Flat Tire 354
Fluids
Brake 329
Engine Coolant 326
Transmission Fluid 329
Windshield Washer 330
FM/AM Radio 178
Folding Down the Rear Seats 74
Foot Brake 104
Front Airbags (SRS) 42
Front Seat Heaters 152
Front Seats
Adjusting 71
Front Sensor Camera 233
Fuel 116
Average Fuel Economy 299
Economy 118
Gauge 294
Instant Fuel Economy 299

Low Fuel Indicator 289
Range 298
Recommendation 116
Refueling 116
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 118
Fuel Fill Door 117
Unable to Unlock 381
Fuses 374
Inspecting and Changing 378
Locations 374, 376

G

Gasoline (Fuel) 116
Average Fuel Economy 299
Economy 118
Gauge 294
Information 116
Instant Fuel Economy 299
Low Fuel Indicator 289
Recommendation 116
Refueling 116
Gauge Display Settings 304
Gauges 293
Glove Box 145
Google built-in 184

H

HandsFreeLink® (HFL) 197
Automatic Transferring 201
Emergency Call (eCall) 384
Favorite Contacts 198
HFL Menus 201
HFL Status Display 198
Making a Call 199
Options During a Call 201
Phone Setup 166, 201
Receiving a Call 200
Ringtone 201
Hazard Warning Button 13
HD Radio™ 178, 227
Head Restraints 70, 71
Headlights 120
Aiming 351
Auto High-Beam 123
Operating 120
Heated Steering Wheel 154
Heater (Steering Wheel) 154
Heaters (Seat) 152, 153
HFL (HandsFreeLink®) 197
High Beam Indicator 122
Hill Start Assist System 112
Honda App License Agreement 213
Honda Sensing® 231
HondaLink® 190
Hybrid Vehicle
SPORT HYBRID i-MMD (intelligent Multi-Mode Drive) 16

I

iPhone 181, 212
iPod 181, 212
Identification Numbers
Engine and Transmission 389
Vehicle Identification 389
Immobilizer System 55
Indicator 55
Indicators 285
12-Volt Battery Charging System 288
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (Amber) 291
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (White/Green) 253
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Interval 256
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 289
Auto High-Beam 123
Automatic Brake Hold 109
Automatic Brake Hold System 108
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System 290
Engine oil pressure low Warning 372
EV 18
High Beam Indicator 122
Immobilizer System 55
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (Amber) 291
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (White/Green) 264
Lights On 120
Low Fuel 289
Low Tire Pressure/TPMS 138, 290
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 289
Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) 288
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red) 287
READY indicator 98
Safety Support (Amber) 291
Safety Support (Green/Gray) 303

Seat Belt Reminder 79, 288
Security System Alarm 56
Shift Position 102
Supplemental Restraint System 50, 288
System Message 305
Transmission System 291
Turn Signal Indicators 120
Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) OFF 137, 290
Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) System 136, 290
Instant Fuel Economy 299
Interior Lights 143
Interior Rearview Mirror 85

J

Jump Starting 367

K

Key Number Tag 58
Keyless Access System 59
Keys 54
Key Number Tag 58
Rear Door Won't Open 66
Remote Transmitter 59
Valet Key 91
Knee Airbags 45

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 263
Indicator (Amber) 291
Indicator (White/Green) 264
LATCH (Child Seats) 32
Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto 227
License Information 225
Lights 120, 351
Automatic 120
Bulb Replacement 351
Daytime Running Lights 123
High Beam Indicator 122
Interior 143
Lights On Indicator 120
Turn Signals 120
Load Limits 92
Locking/Unlocking 59
Auto Door Locking 65
Auto Door Unlocking 66
Childproof Door Locks 66
From Inside 64
From Outside 63
Using a Key 63
Using the Keyless Access System 59
Using the Remote Transmitter 59
Low Fuel Indicator 289
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength 54
Low Speed Braking Control 244
On and Off 246
Lower Anchors 32
Luggage (Maximum Load Limit) 92

M

Maintenance 312
12-volt Battery 343
Brake Fluid 329
Cleaning 346
Climate Control System 345
Coolant 326
Maintenance Minder™ 315
Oil 323
Radiator 328
Remote Transmitter 352
Replacing Light Bulbs 351
Safety 313
Service Items 317
Tires 333
Transmission Fluid 329
Under the Hood 320
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 289
Map Lights 143
Maximum Load Limit 92
Meters, Gauges 293
Mirrors 85
Adjusting 85
Door 85
Interior Rearview 85
Modifications (and Accessories) 26
Moonroof 155
Motion Management System 137

N

Numbers (Identification) 389

O

Odometer 296
Oil (Engine) 322
Adding 324

Checking 323
Engine oil pressure low Warning 372
Recommended Engine Oil 322
Viscosity 322
Open Source Licenses 225, 398
Opening/Closing
Hood 321
Moonroof 155
Power Windows 87
Trunk 90
Outside Temperature 295
Overheating 370

P

Panic mode 57
Parking 104, 113
Parking Brake 104
Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) 288
Parking Brake and Brake System (Red) 287
Parking Sensor System 281
On and Off 281
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator 50
Power Flow 187
Power Mode Reminder 97
Power System
Turn off 99
Turn on 98
Power System Won't Start 364, 367
Power Windows 87
POWER Button 97
Precautions While Driving
Rain 25
Pregnant Women 82
Puncture (Tire) 354

R

Radar Sensor 235
Radiator 328
Radio (AM/FM) 178
Radio Data System (RDS) 179
Range 298
RDS (Radio Data System) 179
Readiness Codes (Emissions Testing) 393
Rear Defogger/Heated Door Mirror Button 130
Rear Seat Heaters 153
Rear Seat Reminder 77
Rear Seats (Folding Down) 74
Rear View Camera 114
Rearview Mirror 85
Refueling 116
Fuel Gauge 294
Gasoline 116, 387
Low Fuel Indicator 289
Regulations 139, 337, 390
Remote Engine Start 99
Remote Transmitter 59
Replacement
12-volt Battery 343
Bulbs 351
Fuses 374
Tires 333
Wiper Blade Rubber 331
Reporting Safety Defects 391
Resetting a Trip Meter 299
READY indicator 98
Road Departure Mitigation System 248
On and Off 249

S

Safe Driving 21
Safety Check 23
Safety Labels 53
Safety Message 2
Safety Support 302
Indicator (Amber) 291
Indicator (Green/Gray) 303
Seat Belts 78, 302
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor 83
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 80
Checking 83
Fastening 81
Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 35
Pregnant Women 82
Reminder 79
Warning Indicator 79, 288
Seat Heaters 152, 153
Seats 69
Adjusting 69
Front Seat Heaters 152
Front Seats 71
Rear Seat Heaters 153
Rear Seats 73
Ventilation 152
Security System 56
Immobilizer System Indicator 55

Security System Alarm Indicator 56
Selecting a Child Seat 32
Settings 202
Shift Lever 102
Releasing 369
Won't Move 369
Shift Position Indicator 102
Shifting (Transmission) 102
Shoulder Anchor 83
Side Airbags 47
Side Curtain Airbags 48
Snow Tires 340
Sonar Sensors 236
Spark Plugs 387
Specifications 387
Specified Fuel 116, 387
Speed/Distance Units 304
Speedometer 293
SRS Airbags (Airbags) 42
Steering Wheel 68
Adjusting 68
Heater 154
Sunglasses Holder 149
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 42
Switches (Around the Steering Wheel) 13, 14
System Message Indicator 305
System Updates 171

T

Temperature
Outside Temperature 295
Temperature Sensor 295
Temporary Tire Repair Kit 355
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 138
Indicator 290
Tire Repair Kit 354
Tires 333
Air Pressure 388
Checking and Maintaining 333
Flat Tire (Puncture) 354
Inspection 334
Labeling 334
Puncture (Flat Tire) 354
Regulations 337
Rotation 341
Temporary Tire Repair Kit 355
Tire Chains 340
Wear Indicators 339
Winter 340
Tools 350
Towing a Trailer 95
Towing Behind a Motorhome 95
Towing Your Vehicle 95
Behind a Motorhome 95
Emergency 380
TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) 138
Indicator 290
Traffic Jam Assist 267
Traffic Sign Recognition System 271, 295
Transmission 102
Creeping 112
Fluid 329
Indicator 291
Number 389
Shift Lever Does Not Move 369
Shift Position Indicator 102
Trip Computer 173
Trip Meter 299
Troubleshooting 363, 367
Blown Fuse 374
Emergency Towing 380
Flat Tire/Puncture 354
Overheating 370
Power System Won't Start 364, 367
Premium Gasoline 116
Puncture/Flat Tire 354
Rear Door Won't Open 66
Shift Lever Won't Move 369
Warning Indicators 285
Trunk 90
Lid 90
Main Switch 91
Turn off 99
Turn on Power System 98
Turn Signals 120
Indicators (Instrument Panel) 120
Turning on the Power
Does Not Activate 364
Does Not Start 367

U

Under-Floor Storage Area 151
Unlocking the Doors 59
USB Flash Drives 182, 212
USB Ports 164

V

Vanity Mirrors 11
Vehicle Identification Number 389
Vehicle Stability Assist™ (VSA®) 136
Off Indicator 290
On and Off 137
System Indicator 290
Viscosity (Oil) 322, 387
VSA® (Vehicle Stability Assist™) 136

W

Walk Away Auto Lock® 61
Warning 305
Warning Indicator On/Blinking 286
Warning Labels 53
Warranties (Warranty Manual provided separately) 394
Wear Indicators (Tire) 339
Wi-Fi Connection 191
Window Washers
Adding/Refilling Fluid 330
Switch 126
Windows(Opening and Closing) 87
Windshield
Cleaning 346, 348
Defrosting/Defogging 130
Washer Fluid 330
Wiper Blades 331
Wipers and Washers 126
Winter Tires
Snow Tires 340
Tire Chains 340
Wipers and Washers 126
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades 331
Wired Connection 181
Wireless Charger 146
Worn Tires 333

HONDA

MYGARAGE.HONDA.COM (U.S.A.)
HONDA.CA (CANADA)

3130B630
OM-27029
00X31-30B-6300

2026 HONDA ACCORD HYBRID OWNER'S MANUAL
© 2025 HONDA MOTOR CO., LTD. – ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

PRINTED IN THE U.S.A.